

# tagpdf – L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X kernel code for PDF tagging\*

Ulrike Fischer<sup>†</sup>

Released 2024-11-19

## Contents

<b>I</b>	<b>The tagpdf main module</b>	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>6</b>
1	Initialization and test if pdfmanagement is active.	7
2	base package	8
3	Package options	8
4	Packages	8
	4.1 Patches related to Ref improvement . . . . .	9
	4.2 a LastPage label . . . . .	9
5	Variables	10
6	Variants of l3 commands	11
7	Label and Reference commands	11
8	Setup label attributes	12
9	Commands to fill seq and prop	12
10	General tagging commands	13
11	Keys for tagpdfsetup	14
12	loading of engine/more dependent code	16
<b>II</b>	<b>The tagpdf-checks module</b>	
	Messages and check code	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>17</b>

---

\*This file describes v0.99i, last revised 2024-11-19.

<sup>†</sup>E-mail: [fischer@troubleshooting-tex.de](mailto:fischer@troubleshooting-tex.de)

<b>1</b>	<b>Commands</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Description of log messages</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1	\ShowTagging command . . . . .	17
2.2	Messages in checks and commands . . . . .	18
2.3	Messages from the ptagging code . . . . .	18
2.4	Warning messages from the lua-code . . . . .	18
2.5	Info messages from the lua-code . . . . .	18
2.6	Debug mode messages and code . . . . .	19
2.7	Messages . . . . .	19
<b>3</b>	<b>Messages</b>	<b>21</b>
3.1	Messages related to mc-chunks . . . . .	21
3.2	Messages related to structures . . . . .	22
3.3	Attributes . . . . .	24
3.4	Roles . . . . .	24
3.5	Miscellaneous . . . . .	25
<b>4</b>	<b>Retrieving data</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>User conditionals</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Internal checks</b>	<b>26</b>
6.1	checks for active tagging . . . . .	26
6.2	Checks related to structures . . . . .	27
6.3	Checks related to roles . . . . .	28
6.4	Check related to mc-chunks . . . . .	29
6.5	Checks related to the state of MC on a page or in a split stream . . . . .	32
6.6	Benchmarks . . . . .	35
<b>III The tagpdf-user module</b>		
<b>Code related to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>2</sub>ε user commands and document commands</b>		
	<b>Part of the tagpdf package</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Setup commands</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Commands related to mc-chunks</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Commands related to structures</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Debugging</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Extension commands</b>	<b>38</b>
5.1	Fake space . . . . .	38
5.2	Tagging of paragraphs . . . . .	38
5.3	Header and footer . . . . .	39
5.4	Link tagging . . . . .	39
<b>6</b>	<b>Socket support</b>	<b>39</b>

<b>7</b>	<b>User commands and extensions of document commands</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Setup and preamble commands</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Commands for the mc-chunks</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Commands for the structure</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Socket support</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Debugging</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>Commands to extend document commands</b>	<b>47</b>
	13.1 Document structure . . . . .	47
	13.2 Structure destinations . . . . .	48
	13.3 Fake space . . . . .	48
	13.4 Paratagging . . . . .	48
	13.5 Language support . . . . .	56
	13.6 Header and footer . . . . .	56
	13.7 Links . . . . .	58

**IV The tagpdf-tree module**  
**Commands trees and main dictionaries**  
**Part of the tagpdf package** **60**

<b>1</b>	<b>Trees, pdfmanagement and finalization code</b>	<b>60</b>
	1.1 Check structure . . . . .	60
	1.2 Catalog: MarkInfo and StructTreeRoot and OpenAction . . . . .	61
	1.3 Writing the IDtree . . . . .	62
	1.4 Writing structure elements . . . . .	63
	1.5 ParentTree . . . . .	64
	1.6 Rolemap dictionary . . . . .	67
	1.7 Classmap dictionary . . . . .	67
	1.8 Namespaces . . . . .	68
	1.9 Finishing the structure . . . . .	69
	1.10 StructParents entry for Page . . . . .	70

**V The tagpdf-mc-shared module**  
**Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), code shared by**  
**all modes**  
**Part of the tagpdf package** **71**

<b>1</b>	<b>Public Commands</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Public keys</b>	<b>72</b>

<b>3</b>	<b>Marked content code – shared</b>	<b>73</b>
3.1	Variables and counters . . . . .	73
3.2	Functions . . . . .	74
3.3	Keys . . . . .	77
<b>VI</b>	<b>The tagpdf-mc-generic module</b>	
	<b>Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), generic mode</b>	
	<b>Part of the tagpdf package</b>	<b>79</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Marked content code – generic mode</b>	<b>79</b>
1.1	Variables . . . . .	79
1.2	Functions . . . . .	80
1.3	Looking at MC marks in boxes . . . . .	83
1.4	Keys . . . . .	91
<b>VII</b>	<b>The tagpdf-mc-luacode module</b>	
	<b>Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), luamode-specific</b>	
	<b>Part of the tagpdf package</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Marked content code – luamode code</b>	<b>93</b>
1.1	Commands . . . . .	95
1.2	Key definitions . . . . .	99
<b>VIII</b>	<b>The tagpdf-struct module</b>	
	<b>Commands to create the structure</b>	
	<b>Part of the tagpdf package</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Public Commands</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Public keys</b>	<b>103</b>
2.1	Keys for the structure commands . . . . .	103
2.2	Setup keys . . . . .	105
<b>3</b>	<b>Variables</b>	<b>105</b>
3.1	Variables used by the keys . . . . .	107
3.2	Variables used by tagging code of basic elements . . . . .	108
<b>4</b>	<b>Commands</b>	<b>108</b>
4.1	Initialization of the StructTreeRoot . . . . .	109
4.2	Adding the /ID key . . . . .	110
4.3	Filling in the tag info . . . . .	111
4.4	Handlings kids . . . . .	112
4.5	Output of the object . . . . .	116
<b>5</b>	<b>Keys</b>	<b>120</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>User commands</b>	<b>126</b>

<b>7</b>	<b>Attributes and attribute classes</b>	<b>135</b>
7.1	Variables . . . . .	135
7.2	Commands and keys . . . . .	136
<b>IX</b>	<b>The tagpdf-luatex.def</b>	
	Driver for luatex	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>139</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Loading the lua</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Logging functions</b>	<b>143</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Helper functions</b>	<b>145</b>
3.1	Retrieve data functions . . . . .	145
3.2	Functions to insert the pdf literals . . . . .	148
<b>4</b>	<b>Function for the real space chars</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Function for the tagging</b>	<b>153</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Parenttree</b>	<b>158</b>
<b>X</b>	<b>The tagpdf-roles module</b>	
	Tags, roles and namespace code	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>161</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Code related to roles and structure names</b>	<b>161</b>
1.1	Variables . . . . .	162
1.2	Namespaces . . . . .	164
1.3	Adding a new tag . . . . .	165
1.3.1	pdf 1.7 and earlier . . . . .	166
1.3.2	The pdf 2.0 version . . . . .	168
1.4	Helper command to read the data from files . . . . .	170
1.5	Reading the default data . . . . .	172
1.6	Parent-child rules . . . . .	173
1.6.1	Reading in the csv-files . . . . .	173
1.6.2	Retrieving the parent-child rule . . . . .	175
1.7	Remapping of tags . . . . .	180
1.8	Key-val user interface . . . . .	180
<b>XI</b>	<b>The tagpdf-space module</b>	
	Code related to real space chars	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>183</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Code for interword spaces</b>	<b>183</b>
	<b>Index</b>	<b>187</b>

# Part I

## The tagpdf main module

### Part of the tagpdf package

---

<code>\tag_suspend:n</code>	<code>\tag_suspend:n{⟨label⟩}</code>
<code>\tag_resume:n</code>	<code>\tag_resume:n{⟨label⟩}</code>
<code>\tag_stop:n</code>	<code>\tag_stop:n{⟨label⟩}</code> ( <i>deprecated</i> )
<code>\tag_start:n</code>	<code>\tag_start:n{⟨label⟩}</code> ( <i>deprecated</i> )

---

We need commands to stop tagging in some places. They switches three local booleans and also stop the counting of paragraphs. If they are nested an inner `\tag_resume:n` will not restart tagging. `⟨label⟩` is only used in debugging messages to allow to follow the nesting and to identify which code is disabling the tagging. The label is not expanded so can be a single token, e.g. `\caption`. `\tag_suspend:n` and `\tag_resume:n` are the l3-layer variants of `\SuspendTagging` and `\ResumeTagging` and will be provided by the kernel in the next release.

---

<code>\tag_stop:</code>	<i>deprecated</i> These are variants of the above commands without the debugging level. They
<code>\tag_start:</code>	are now deprecated and it is recommended to use the kernel command <code>\SuspendTagging</code> ,
<code>\tagstop</code>	<code>\ResumeTagging</code> , <code>\tag_suspend:n</code> and <code>\tag_resume:n</code> instead.
<code>\tagstart</code>	

---

`activate/spaces` (*setup key*) `activate/spaces` activates the additional parsing needed for interword spaces. It replaces the deprecated key `interwordspace`.

`activate/mc` (*setup key*) A key to to activate the marked content code. It should be used only in special cases, `activate-mc` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*) e.g. for debugging.

`activate/tree` (*setup key*) This key activates the code that finalize the various trees. It should be used only in special cases, e.g. for debugging. `activate-tree` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)

`activate/struct` (*setup key*) This key activates the code for structures. It should be used only in special cases, e.g. for debugging. `activate-struct` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)

`activate/all` (*setup key*) This is a meta key for the three previous keys and is normally what should be used to activate tagging. `activate-all` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)

`activate/struct-dest` (*setup key*) The key allows to suppress the creation of structure destinations

`activate-struct-dest` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)  
`debug/log` (*setup key*) The `debug/log` key takes currently the values `none`, `v`, `vv`, `vvv`, `all`. More details are in `tagpdf-checks`.

`activate/tagunmarked` (*setup key*) This key allows to set if (in luamode) unmarked text should be marked up as artifact. `activate-tagunmarked` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*) The initial value is true.

`activate/softhyphen` (*setup key*) This key allows to activates automatic handling of hyphens inserted by hyphenation. It only is used in luamode and replaces hyphens by U+00AD if the font supports this.

`page/tabsorder` (*setup key*) This sets the tabsorder on a page. The values are `row`, `column`, `structure` (default) or `none`. Currently this is set more or less globally. More finer control can be added if needed.

---

`tagstruct`  
`tagstructobj`  
`tagabspage`  
`tagmcabs`  
`tagmcid`

---

These are attributes used by the label/ref system.

## 1 Initialization and test if pdfmanagement is active.

```

1 <@=tag>
2 <*package>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4   { LaTeX kernel code for PDF tagging }
5
6 \bool_if:nF
7   {
8     \bool_lazy_and_p:nn
9       {\cs_if_exist_p:N \pdfmanagement_if_active_p:}
10      { \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: }
11   }
12   { %error for now, perhaps warning later.
13     \PackageError{tagpdf}
14       {
15         PDF-resource-management~is~no~active!\MessageBreak
16         tagpdf~will~no~work.
17       }
18     {
19       Activate-it~with \MessageBreak
20       \string\RequirePackage{pdfmanagement-testphase}\MessageBreak
21       \string\DocumentMetadata{<options>}\MessageBreak
22       before~\string\documentclass
23     }
24   }
25 </package>
26 <*debug>
27 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-debug} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
28   { debug code for tagpdf }
29 \@ifpackageloaded{tagpdf}{\PackageWarning{tagpdf-debug}{tagpdf~not~loaded,~quitting}\ending
30 </debug> We map the internal module name “tag” to “tagpdf” in messages.
31 <*package>
32 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { tag }{ tagpdf }
33 </package>
34 Debug mode has its special mapping:
35 <*debug>
36 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { tag / debug} {}
37 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { tag / debug }{tagpdf~DEBUG}
38 </debug>

```

## 2 base package

To avoid to have to test everywhere if tagpdf has been loaded and is active, we define a base package with dummy functions

```
36 <*base>
37 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-base} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
38   {part of tagpdf - provide base, no-op versions of the user commands }
39 </base>
```

## 3 Package options

There are only two documented options to switch for luatex between generic and luamode, TODO try to get rid of them. The option `disabledelayedshipout` is only temporary to be able to debug problem with the new shipout keyword if needed.

```
40 <*package>
41 \bool_new:N\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
42 \bool_new:N\g__tag_delayed_shipout_bool
43 \bool_lazy_and:nnT
44   { \bool_if_exist_p:N \l__pdfmanagement_delayed_shipout_bool }
45   { \l__pdfmanagement_delayed_shipout_bool }
46   {
47     \bool_gset_true:N\g__tag_delayed_shipout_bool
48   }
49 \DeclareOption {luamode} { \sys_if_engine luatex:T { \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_mode_lua_bool }
50 \DeclareOption {genericmode}{ \bool_gset_false:N\g__tag_mode_lua_bool }
51 \DeclareOption {disabledelayedshipout}{ \bool_gset_false:N\g__tag_delayed_shipout_bool }
52 \ExecuteOptions{luamode}
53 \ProcessOptions
```

## 4 Packages

To be on the safe side for now, load also the base definitions

```
54 \RequirePackage{tagpdf-base}
55 </package>
```

The no-op version should behave a near enough to the real code as possible, so we define a command which a special in the relevant backends:

```
56 <*base>
57 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_whatsits: {}
58 \AddToHook{begindocument}
59   {
60     \str_case:VnF \c_sys_backend_str
61     {
62       { luatex } { \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_whatsits: {} }
63       { dvisvgm } { \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_whatsits: {} }
64     }
65     {
66       \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_whatsits: {\tex_special:D {} }
67     }
68   }
69 </base>
```



## 4.1 Patches related to Ref improvement

2024-09-09: Temporary code. Can be removed when the latex-lab-footnote and latex-lab-toc code have been adapted to the better Ref handling.

```
70 <*package>
71 \AddToHook{package/latex-lab-testphase-new-or-2/after}
72 {
73   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__fnote_gput_ref:nn #1 #2 %#1 the structure number receiving the r
74     {
75       \tag_struct_gput:nnn {#1}{ref_num}{#2}
76     }
77 }
78 \AddToHook{package/latex-lab-testphase-toc/after}
79 {
80   \cs_set_protected:Npn \g__tag_struct_ref_by_dest:
81     {
82       \prop_map_inline:Nn\g__tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop
83         {
84           \tag_struct_gput:nnn {##1}{ref_dest}{##2}
85         }
86     }
87 }
88 </package>
```

## 4.2 a LastPage label

See also issue #2 in Accessible-xref

\\_\_tag\_lastpagelabel:

```
89 <*package>
90 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_lastpagelabel:
91 {
92   \legacy_if:nT { @filesw }
93   {
94     \exp_args:NNne \exp_args:NNe\iow_now:Nn \@auxout
95       {
96         \token_to_str:N \new@label@record
97           {@tag@LastPage}
98           {
99             {abspage} { \int_use:N \g_shipout_readonly_int}
100             {tagmcabs}{ \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
101             {tagstruct}{\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
102           }
103         }
104     }
105 }
106
107 \AddToHook{enddocument/afterlastpage}
108 { \__tag_lastpagelabel: }
```

*(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_lastpagelabel:.)*

## 5 Variables

```

\l__tag_tmpa_tl A few temporary variables
\l__tag_tmpb_tl
\l__tag_Ref_tmpa_tl
\l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
\l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl \l__tag_tmpa_str
\l__tag_tmpa_prop
\l__tag_tmpa_seq
\l__tag_tmpb_seq
\l__tag_tmpa_clist
\l__tag_tmpa_int
\l__tag_tmpa_box
\l__tag_tmpb_box
109 \tl_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
110 \tl_new:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl
111 \tl_new:N \l__tag_Ref_tmpa_tl
112 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
113 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
114 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
115 \str_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_str
116 \prop_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_prop
117 \seq_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
118 \seq_new:N \l__tag_tmpb_seq
119 \clist_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_clist
120 \int_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_int
121 \box_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_box
122 \box_new:N \l__tag_tmpb_box

```

*(End of definition for \l\_\_tag\_tmpa\_tl and others.)*

Attribute lists for the label command. We have a list for mc-related labels, and one for structures.

```

\c__tag_property_mc_clist
\c__tag_property_struct_clist
123 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_property_mc_clist {tagabspace,tagmcabs,tagmcid}
124 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_property_struct_clist {tagstruct,tagstructobj}

```

*(End of definition for \c\_\_tag\_property\_mc\_clist and \c\_\_tag\_property\_struct\_clist.)*

```

\l__tag_loglevel_int

```

This integer hold the log-level and so allows to control the messages. TODO: a list which log-level shows what is needed. The current behaviour is quite ad-hoc.

```

125 \int_new:N \l__tag_loglevel_int

```

*(End of definition for \l\_\_tag\_loglevel\_int.)*

```

\g__tag_active_space_bool
\g__tag_active_mc_bool
\g__tag_active_tree_bool
\g__tag_active_struct_bool
\g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool

```

These booleans should help to control the global behaviour of tagpdf. Ideally it should more or less do nothing if all are false. The space-boolean controls the interword space code, the mc-boolean activates `\tag_mc_begin:n`, the tree-boolean activates writing the finish code and the pdfmanagement related commands, the struct-boolean activates the storing of the structure data. In a normal document all should be active, the split is only there for debugging purpose. Structure destination will be activated automatically, but with the boolean struct-dest-boolean one can suppress them. Also we assume currently that they are set only at begin document. But if some control passing over groups are needed they could be perhaps used in a document too. TODO: check if they are used everywhere as needed and as wanted.

```

126 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
127 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_mc_bool
128 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_tree_bool
129 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_struct_bool
130 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool
131 \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool

```

*(End of definition for \g\_\_tag\_active\_space\_bool and others.)*

`\l__tag_active_mc_bool` These booleans should help to control the *local* behaviour of tagpdf. In some cases it could e.g. be necessary to stop tagging completely. As local booleans they respect groups.

`\l__tag_active_struct_bool` TODO: check if they are used everywhere as needed and as wanted.

`\l__tag_active_socket_bool`

```

132 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
133 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
134 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
135 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
136 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_active_mc_bool`, `\l__tag_active_struct_bool`, and `\l__tag_active_socket_bool`.)

`\g__tag_tagunmarked_bool` This boolean controls if the code should try to automatically tag parts not in mc-chunk. It is currently only used in luamode. It would be possible to use it in generic mode, but this would create quite a lot empty artifact mc-chunks.

```

137 \bool_new:N \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_tagunmarked_bool`.)

`\g__tag_softthyphen_bool` This boolean controls if the code should try to automatically handle hyphens from hyphenation. It is currently only used in luamode.

```

138 \bool_new:N \g__tag_softthyphen_bool

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_softthyphen_bool`.)

## 6 Variants of l3 commands

```

139 \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \pdf_object_if_exist:n {e}{T,F,TF}
140 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdf_object_ref:n {e}
141 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn {nne}
142 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn {nee,oee}
143 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput:Nnn {Nee,Nen} %** unneeded
144 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {Nee} %** unneeded
145 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_item:Nn {No,Ne} %** unneeded
146 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_split:Nnn{Nne} %** unneeded
147 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_set_convert:Nnnn {Nonn, Noon, Nnon }
148 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \clist_map_inline:nn {on}

```

## 7 Label and Reference commands

The code uses mostly the kernel properties but need a few local variants.

`\__tag_property_record:nn` The command to record a property while preserving the spaces similar to the standard `\label`.

```

149 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_property_record:nn #1#2
150 {
151 \@bsphack
152 \property_record:nn{#1}{#2}
153 \@esphack
154 }

```

155

And a few variants

```

156 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \property_ref:nnn {enn}
157 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \property_ref:nn {en}
158 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_property_record:nn {en,eV}

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_property_record:nn`.)

`\__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn`

A command to retrieve the lastpage label, this will be adapted when there is a proper, kernel lastpage label.

```

159 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn #1 #2
160 {
161   \property_ref:nnn {@tag@LastPage}{#1}{#2}
162 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn`.)

## 8 Setup label attributes

`tagstruct` This are attributes used by the label/ref system. With structures we store the structure number `tagstruct` and the object reference `tagstructobj`. The second is needed to be able to reference a structure which hasn't been created yet. The alternative would be to create the object in such cases, but then we would have to check the object existence all the time.

With mc-chunks we store the absolute page number `tagabspage`, the absolute id `tagmcabc`, and the id on the page `tagmcid`.

```

163 \property_new:nnnn
164   { tagstruct } { now }
165   {1} { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
166 \property_new:nnnn { tagstructobj } { now } {}
167 {
168   \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct } { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
169 }
170 \property_new:nnnn
171   { tagabspage } { shipout }
172   {0} { \int_use:N \g_shipout_readonly_int }
173 \property_new:nnnn { tagmcabs } { now }
174   {0} { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
175
176 \flag_new:n { __tag/mcid }
177 \property_new:nnnn {tagmcid} { shipout }
178   {0} { \flag_height:n { __tag/mcid } }
179

```

(End of definition for `tagstruct` and others. These functions are documented on page 7.)

## 9 Commands to fill seq and prop

With most engines these are simply copies of the expl3 commands, but luatex will overwrite them, to store the data also in lua tables.

```

    \_tag_prop_new:N
\_tag_prop_new_linked:N 180 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_prop_new:N \prop_new:N
    \_tag_seq_new:N      181 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_prop_new_linked:N \prop_new_linked:N
    \_tag_prop_gput:Nnn  182 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_seq_new:N \seq_new:N
\_tag_seq_gput_right:Nn 183 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_prop_gput:Nnn \prop_gput:Nnn
    \_tag_seq_item:cn    184 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \seq_gput_right:Nn
    \_tag_prop_item:cn   185 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_seq_gput_left:Nn \seq_gput_left:Nn
    \_tag_seq_show:N     186 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_seq_item:cn \seq_item:cn
    \_tag_prop_show:N    187 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_prop_item:cn \prop_item:cn
    \_tag_prop_show:N    188 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_seq_show:N \seq_show:N
    \_tag_prop_show:N    189 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_prop_show:N \prop_show:N
190 % cnx temporary needed for latex-lab-graphic code
191 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_prop_gput:Nnn { Nen , Nee, Nne , cmn, cen, cne, cno, cnx}
192 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_seq_gput_right:Nn { Ne , No, cn, ce }
193 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_seq_gput_left:Nn { ce }
194 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_prop_new:N { c }
195 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_seq_new:N { c }
196 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_seq_show:N { c }
197 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_prop_show:N { c }
198 \end{package}

```

(End of definition for `\_tag_prop_new:N` and others.)

## 10 General tagging commands

`\tag_suspend:n` We need commands to stop tagging in some places. They switch local booleans and also stop the counting of paragraphs. The commands keep track of the nesting with a local counter. Tagging only is only restarted at the outer level, if the current level is 1. The `\tag_start:` commands with argument allow to give a label. This is only used in debugging messages to allow to follow the nesting. The label is not expand so can e.g. be a single command token.

When stop/start pairs are nested we do not want the inner start command to restart tagging. To control this we use a local int: The stop command will increase it. The starting will decrease it and only restart tagging, if it is zero. This will replace the label version.

```

199 \*package | debug)
200 \package\int_new:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int
\l__tag_tag_stop_int
201 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_stop:
202 {
203 \debug \msg_note:nne {tag / debug }{tag-suspend}{ \int_use:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
204 \int_incr:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int
205 \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
206 \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
207 \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool
208 \_tag_stop_para_ints:
209 }
210 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_start:
211 {
212 \int_if_zero:nF { \l__tag_tag_stop_int } { \int_decr:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
213 \int_if_zero:nT { \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
214 {

```

```

215         \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
216         \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
217         \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool
218         \__tag_start_para_ints:
219     }
220 <debug>     \msg_note:nne {tag / debug }{tag-resume}{ \int_use:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
221 }
222 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagstop\tag_stop:
223 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagstart\tag_start:
224 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_suspend:n #1
225 {
226 <debug>     \msg_note:nnee {tag / debug }{tag-suspend}
227 <debug>     { \int_use:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }{\exp_not:n{#1}}
228     \int_incr:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int
229     \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
230     \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
231     \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool
232     \__tag_stop_para_ints:
233 }
234 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_stop:n \tag_suspend:n
235 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_resume:n #1
236 {
237     \int_if_zero:nF { \l__tag_tag_stop_int } { \int_decr:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
238     \int_if_zero:nT { \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
239     {
240         \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
241         \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
242         \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool
243         \__tag_start_para_ints:
244     }
245 <debug>     \msg_note:nnee {tag / debug }{tag-resume}
246 <debug>     { \int_use:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }{\exp_not:n{#1}}
247 }
248 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_start:n \tag_resume:n
249 </package | debug>
250 <*base>
251 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_stop:{}
252 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_start:{}
253 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tagstop{}
254 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tagstart{}
255 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_stop:n #1 {}
256 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_start:n #1 {}

```

Until the commands are provided by the kernel we provide them here too

```

257 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_suspend:n \tag_stop:n
258 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_resume:n \tag_start:n
259 </base>

```

*(End of definition for \tag\_suspend:n and others. These functions are documented on page 6.)*

## 11 Keys for tagpdfsetup

TODO: the log-levels must be sorted

`activate/mc` (*setup key*) Keys to (globally) activate tagging. `activate/spaces` activates the additional parsing needed for interword spaces. It is defined in `tagpdf-space`. `activate/struct-dest` allows to activate or suppress structure destinations.

```

260 <*package>
261 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
262 {
263   activate/mc      .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_mc_bool,
264   activate/tree    .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_tree_bool,
265   activate/struct .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_struct_bool,
266   activate/all     .meta:n =
267     {activate/mc={#1},activate/tree={#1},activate/struct={#1}},
268   activate/all     .default:n = true,
269   activate/struct-dest .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool,

```

old, deprecated names

```

270   activate-mc     .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_mc_bool,
271   activate-tree   .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_tree_bool,
272   activate-struct .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_struct_bool,
273   activate-all    .meta:n =
274     {activate/mc={#1},activate/tree={#1},activate/struct={#1}},
275   activate-all    .default:n = true,
276   no-struct-dest .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool,

```

`debug/show` (*setup key*) Subkeys/values are defined in various other places.

```

277   debug/show      .choice:,

```

`debug/log` (*setup key*) The log takes currently the values `none`, `v`, `vv`, `vvv`, `all`. The description of the log levels is in `tagpdf-checks`.

```

278   debug/log      .choice:,
279   debug/log / none .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 0 }},
280   debug/log / v   .code:n =
281     {
282       \int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 1 }
283       \cs_set_protected:Nn \__tag_check_typeout_v:n { \iow_term:e {##1} }
284     },
285   debug/log / vv  .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 2 }},
286   debug/log / vvv .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 3 }},
287   debug/log / all .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 10 }},
288   debug/uncompress .code:n = { \pdf_uncompress: },

```

deprecated but still needed as the `documentmetadata` key argument uses it.

```

289   log      .meta:n = {debug/log={#1}},
290   uncompress .code:n = { \pdf_uncompress: },

```

`activate/tagunmarked` (*setup key*) This key allows to set if (in `luamode`) unmarked text should be marked up as artifact.

`unmarked` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*) The initial value is true.

```

291   activate/tagunmarked .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool,
292   activate/tagunmarked .initial:n = true,

```

deprecated name

```

293   tagunmarked .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool,

```

`activate/softhyphen` (*setup key*) This key activates (in `luamode`) the handling of soft hyphens.

```

294   activate/softhyphen .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_softhyphen_bool,
295   activate/softhyphen .initial:n = true,

```

`page/tabsorder` (*setup key*) This sets the tabsorder on a page. The values are `row`, `column`, `structure` (default) or `none`. Currently this is set more or less globally. More finer control can be added if needed.

```

296   page/tabsorder      .choice:,
297   page/tabsorder / row      .code:n =
298     \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/R},
299   page/tabsorder / column  .code:n =
300     \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/C},
301   page/tabsorder / structure .code:n =
302     \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/S},
303   page/tabsorder / none    .code:n =
304     \pdfmanagement_remove:nn {Page} {Tabs},
305   page/tabsorder      .initial:n = structure,

```

deprecated name

```

306   tabsorder .meta:n = {page/tabsorder={#1}},
307   }

```

## 12 loading of engine/more dependent code

```

308 \sys_if_engine luatex:T
309 {
310   \file_input:n {tagpdf-luatex.def}
311 }
312 </package>
313 <*mcloding>
314 \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
315 {
316   \RequirePackage {tagpdf-mc-code-lua}
317 }
318 {
319   \RequirePackage {tagpdf-mc-code-generic} %
320 }
321 </mcloding>
322 <*debug>
323 \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
324 {
325   \RequirePackage {tagpdf-debug-lua}
326 }
327 {
328   \RequirePackage {tagpdf-debug-generic} %
329 }
330 </debug>

```



## Part II

# The `tagpdf-checks` module

## Messages and check code

### Part of the `tagpdf` package

#### 1 Commands

---

`\tag_if_active_p:` \* This command tests if tagging is active. It only gives true if all tagging has been activated, `\tag_if_active:TF` \* *and* if tagging hasn't been stopped locally.

---

`\tag_get:n` \* `\tag_get:n{<keyword>}`

This is a generic command to retrieve data for the current structure or mc-chunk. Currently the only sensible values for the argument `<keyword>` are `mc_tag`, `struct_tag`, `struct_id` and `struct_num`.

---

`\tag_if_box_tagged_p:N` \* `\tag_if_box_tagged:N{<box>}`

`\tag_if_box_tagged:NTF` \* This tests if a box contains tagging commands. It relies currently on that the code, that saved the box, correctly sets the command `\l_tag_box_int_use:N #1_t1` to a positive value. The LaTeX commands will do that automatically at some time but it is in the responsibility of the user to ensure that when using low-level code. If the internal command doesn't exist the box is assumed to be untagged.

## 2 Description of log messages

### 2.1 `\ShowTagging` command

Argument	type	note
<code>\ShowTaggingmc-data = num</code>	log+term	lua-only
<code>\ShowTaggingmc-current</code>	log+term	
<code>\ShowTaggingstruck-stack= [log show]</code>	log or term+stop	
<code>\ShowTaggingdebug/structures = num</code>	log+termn	debug mode only

## 2.2 Messages in checks and commands

command	message	action
\@@_check_structure_has_tag:n	struct-missing-tag	error
\@@_check_structure_tag:N	role-unknown-tag	warning
\@@_check_info_closing_struct:n	struct-show-closing	info
\@@_check_no_open_struct:	struct-faulty-nesting	error
\@@_check_struct_used:n	struct-used-twice	warning
\@@_check_add_tag_role:nn	role-missing, role-tag, role-unknown	warning, info (>0), warning
\@@_check_mc_if_nested:,	mc-nested	warning
\@@_check_mc_if_open:	mc-not-open	warning
\@@_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn	mc-pushed, mc-popped	info (2), info+seq_log (>2)
\@@_check_mc_tag:N	mc-tag-missing, role-unknown-tag	error (missing), warning (unknown).
\@@_check_mc_used:n	mc-used-twice	warning
\@@_check_show_MCID_by_page:		
\tag_mc_use:n	mc-label-unknown, mc-used-twice	warning
\role_add_tag:nn	new-tag	info (>0)
	sys-no-interwordspace	warning
\@@_struct_write_obj:n	struct-no-objnum	error
\@@_struct_write_obj:n	struct-orphan	warning
\tag_struct_begin:n	struct-faulty-nesting	error
\@@_struct_insert_annot:nn	struct-faulty-nesting	error
tag_struct_use:n	struct-label-unknown	warning
attribute-class, attribute	attr-unknown	error
\@@_tree_fill_parenttree:	tree-mcid-index-wrong	warning TODO: should trigger a standard rerun m
in enddocument/info-hook	para-hook-count-wrong	error (warning?)

## 2.3 Messages from the ptagging code

A few messages are issued in generic mode from the code which reinserts missing TMB/TME. This is currently done if log-level is larger than zero. TODO: reconsider log-level and messages when this code settles down.

## 2.4 Warning messages from the lua-code

The messages are triggered if the log-level is at least equal to the number.

message	log-level	remark
WARN TAG-NOT-TAGGED:	1	
WARN TAG-OPEN-MC:	1	
WARN SHIPOUT-MC-OPEN:	1	
WARN SHIPOUT-UPS:	0	shouldn't happen
WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-MISSING:	0	shouldn't happen
WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-NO-KIDS:	2	e.g. from empty hbox

## 2.5 Info messages from the lua-code

The messages are triggered if the log-level is at least equal to the number. TAG messages are from the traversing function, TEX from code used in the tagpdf-mc module. PARENTREE is the code building the parenttree.

message	log-level	remark
INFO SHIPOUT-INSERT-LAST-EMC	3	finish of shipout code
INFO SPACE-FUNCTION-FONT	3	interwordspace code
INFO TAG-ABSPAGE	3	
INFO TAG-ARGS	4	
INFO TAG-ENDHEAD	4	
INFO TAG-ENDHEAD	4	
INFO TAG-HEAD	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-ARTIFACT	3	

message	log-level	remark
INFO TAG-INSERT-BDC	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-EMC	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-TAG	3	
INFO TAG-KERN-SUBTYPE	4	
INFO TAG-MATH-SUBTYPE	4	
INFO TAG-MC-COMPARE	4	
INFO TAG-MC-INTO-PAGE	3	
INFO TAG-NEW-MC-NODE	4	
INFO TAG-NODE	3	
INFO TAG-NO-HEAD	3	
INFO TAG-NOT-TAGGED	2	replaced by artifact
INFO TAG-QUITTING-BOX	4	
INFO TAG-STORE-MC-KID	4	
INFO TAG-TRAVERSING-BOX	3	
INFO TAG-USE-ACTUALTEXT	3	
INFO TAG-USE-ALT	3	
INFO TAG-USE-RAW	3	
INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID	3	
INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID-TEST	4	
INFO TEX-MC-INTO-STRUCT	3	
INFO TEX-STORE-MC-DATA	3	
INFO TEX-STORE-MC-KID	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-CHUNKS	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NO-DATA	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NUM	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-STRUCT-OBJREF	4	

## 2.6 Debug mode messages and code

If the package tagpdf-debug is loaded a number of commands are redefined and enhanced with additional commands which can be used to output debug messages or collect statistics. The commands are present but do nothing if the log-level is zero.

command	name	action	remark
<code>\tag_mc_begin:n</code>	mc-begin-insert	msg	
	mc-begin-ignore	msg	if inactive

## 2.7 Messages

<code>mc-nested</code>	Various messages related to mc-chunks. TODO document their meaning.
<code>mc-tag-missing</code>	
<code>mc-label-unknown</code>	
<code>mc-used-twice</code>	
<code>mc-not-open</code>	
<code>mc-pushed</code>	
<code>mc-popped</code>	
<code>mc-current</code>	

---

`struct-unknown` Various messages related to structure. Check the definition in the code for their meaning  
`struct-no-objnum` and the arguments they take.  
`struct-orphan`  
`struct-faulty-nesting`  
`struct-missing-tag`  
`struct-used-twice`  
`struct-label-unknown`  
`struct-show-closing`

---

---

`tree-struct-still-open` Message issued at the end of the compilation if there are (beside Root) other open structures on the stack.

---

---

`tree-statistic` Message issued at the end of the compilation showing the number of objects to write

---

---

`show-struct` These two messages are used in debug mode to show the current structures in the log  
`show-kids` and terminal.

---

---

`attr-unknown` Message if an attribute is unknown.

---

---

`role-missing` Messages related to role mapping.  
`role-unknown`  
`role-unknown-tag`  
`role-unknown-NS`  
`role-tag`  
`new-tag`  
`role-parent-child`  
`role-remapping`

---

---

`tree-mcid-index-wrong` Used in the tree code, typically indicates the document must be rerun.

---

---

`sys-no-interwordspace` Message if an engine doesn't support inter word spaces

---

---

`para-hook-count-wrong` Message if the number of begin paragraph and end paragraph differ. This normally means faulty structure.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-checks-code} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to checks, conditionals, debugging and messages}
5 </header>
```

## 3 Messages

### 3.1 Messages related to mc-chunks

**mc-nested** This message is issued if a mc is opened before the previous has been closed. This is not relevant for luamode, as the attributes don't care about this. It is used in the `\@@_check_mc_if_nested`: test.

```
6 (*package)
7 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-nested} { nested~marked~content~found~--~mcid~#1 }
```

*(End of definition for mc-nested. This function is documented on page 19.)*

**mc-tag-missing** If the tag is missing

```
8 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-tag-missing} { required~tag~missing~--~mcid~#1 }
```

*(End of definition for mc-tag-missing. This function is documented on page 19.)*

**mc-label-unknown** If the label of a mc that is used in another place is not known (yet) or has been undefined as the mc was already used.

```
9 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-label-unknown}
10 { label~#1~unknown~or~has~been~already~used.\\
11   Either~rerun~or~remove~one~of~the~uses. }
```

*(End of definition for mc-label-unknown. This function is documented on page 19.)*

**mc-used-twice** An mc-chunk can be inserted only in one structure. This indicates wrong coding and so should at least give a warning.

```
12 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-used-twice} { mc~#1~has~been~already~used }
```

*(End of definition for mc-used-twice. This function is documented on page 19.)*

**mc-not-open** This is issued if a `\tag_mc_end`: is issued wrongly, wrong coding.

```
13 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-not-open} { there~is~no~mc~to~end~at~#1 }
```

*(End of definition for mc-not-open. This function is documented on page 19.)*

**mc-pushed** Informational messages about mc-pushing.

**mc-popped**

```
14 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-pushed} { #1~has~been~pushed~to~the~mc~stack}
15 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-popped} { #1~has~been~removed~from~the~mc~stack }
```

*(End of definition for mc-pushed and mc-popped. These functions are documented on page 19.)*

**mc-current** Informational messages about current mc state.

```
16 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-current}
17 { current~MC:~
18   \bool_if:NTF\g__tag_in_mc_bool
19     {abscnt=\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,~tag=\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl}
20     {no~MC~open,~current~abscnt=\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:"}
21 }
```

*(End of definition for mc-current. This function is documented on page 19.)*

## 3.2 Messages related to structures

**struct-unknown** if for example a parent key value points to structure that doesn't exist (yet)

```
22 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-unknown}  
23   { structure-with-number~#1-doesn't-exist\\ #2 }
```

*(End of definition for struct-unknown. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**struct-no-objnum** Should not happen ...

```
24 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-no-objnum} { objnum-missing-for~structure~#1 }
```

*(End of definition for struct-no-objnum. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**struct-orphan** This indicates that there is a structure which has kids but no parent. This can happen if a structure is stashed but then not used.

```
25 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-orphan}  
26   {  
27     Structure~#1-has~#2~kids~but~no~parent.\\  
28     It-is~turned~into~an~artifact.\\  
29     Did~you~stashed~a~structure~and~then~didn't~use~it?  
30   }  
31
```

*(End of definition for struct-orphan. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**struct-faulty-nesting** This indicates that there is somewhere one `\tag_struct_end:` too much. This should be normally an error.

```
32 \msg_new:nnn { tag }  
33   {struct-faulty-nesting}  
34   { there-is~no~open~structure~on~the~stack }
```

*(End of definition for struct-faulty-nesting. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**struct-missing-tag** A structure must have a tag.

```
35 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-missing-tag} { a-structure~must~have~a~tag! }
```

*(End of definition for struct-missing-tag. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**struct-used-twice**

```
36 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice}  
37   { structure~with~label~#1~has~already~been~used }
```

*(End of definition for struct-used-twice. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**struct-label-unknown** label is unknown, typically needs a rerun.

```
38 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-label-unknown}  
39   { structure~with~label~#1~is~unknown~rerun }
```

*(End of definition for struct-label-unknown. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**struct-show-closing** Informational message shown if log-mode is high enough

```
40 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-show-closing}  
41   { closing~structure~#1~tagged~\use:e{\prop_item:cn{g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{S}} }
```

*(End of definition for struct-show-closing. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**struct-Ref-unknown** This message is issued at the end, when the Ref keys are updated. TODO: in debug mode it should report more info about the structure.

```
42 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-Ref-unknown}
43 {
44     #1~has~no~related~structure.\\
45     /Ref~not~updated.
46 }
```

*(End of definition for struct-Ref-unknown. This function is documented on page ??.)*

**tree-struct-still-open** Message issued at the end if there are beside Root other open structures on the stack.

```
47 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {tree-struct-still-open}
48 {
49     There~are~still~open~structures~on~the~stack!\\
50     The~stack~contains~\seq_use:Nn\g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq{,}.\\
51     The~structures~are~automatically~closed,\\
52     but~their~nesting~can~be~wrong.
53 }
```

*(End of definition for tree-struct-still-open. This function is documented on page 20.)*

**tree-statistic** Message issued at the end showing the estimated number of structures and MC-childs

```
54 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {tree-statistic}
55 {
56     Finalizing~the~tagging~structure:\\
57     Writing~out~\c_tilde_str
58     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int\c_space_tl~structure~objects\\
59     with~\c_tilde_str
60     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int\c_space_tl'MC'~leaf~nodes.\\
61     Be~patient~if~there~are~lots~of~objects!
62 }
63 </package>
```

*(End of definition for tree-statistic. This function is documented on page 20.)*

The following messages are only needed in debug mode.

**show-struct** This two messages are used to show the current structures in the log and terminal.

**show-kids**

```
64 <*debug>
65 \msg_new:nnn { tag/debug } { show-struct }
66 {
67     =====\\
68     The~structure~#1~
69     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
70     { is~empty \\>~ . }
71     { contains: #2 }
72     \\
73 }
74 \msg_new:nnn { tag/debug } { show-kids }
75 {
76     The~structure~has~the~following~kids:
77     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
78     { \\>~ NONE }
79     { #2 }
80     \\
```

```

81      =====
82    }
83  </debug>

```

(End of definition for `show-struct` and `show-kids`. These functions are documented on page 20.)

### 3.3 Attributes

Not much yet, as attributes aren't used so much.

#### `attr-unknown`

```

84 <*package>
85 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {attr-unknown} { attribute-#1-is-unknown}

```

(End of definition for `attr-unknown`. This function is documented on page 20.)

### 3.4 Roles

`role-missing` Warning message if either the tag or the role is missing

```

role-unknown      86 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-missing}      { tag-#1-has-no-role-assigned }
role-unknown-tag  87 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown}      { role-#1-is-not-known }
role-unknown-NS   88 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-tag} { tag-#1-is-not-known }
                  89 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-NS} { \tl_if_empty:nTF{#1}{Empty-NS}{NS-#1-is-not-known}

```

(End of definition for `role-missing` and others. These functions are documented on page 20.)

`role-parent-child` This is info and warning message about the containment rules between child and parent tags.

```

90 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-parent-child}
91   { Parent-Child-#1'~-->'#2'.\Relation-is-#3-\msg_line_context:}

```

(End of definition for `role-parent-child`. This function is documented on page 20.)

`role-remapping` This is info and warning message about role-remapping

```

92 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-remapping}
93   { remapping-tag-to-#1 }

```

(End of definition for `role-remapping`. This function is documented on page 20.)

`role-tag` Info messages.

```

new-tag          94 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-tag}          { mapping-tag-#1-to-role-#2 }
                95 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {new-tag}          { adding-new-tag-#1 }
                96 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {read-namespace} { reading-namespace-definitions-tagpdf-
                  ns-#1.def }
                97 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {namespace-missing}{ namespace-definitions-tagpdf-ns-#1.def-not-found }
                98 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {namespace-unknown}{ namespace-#1-is-not-declared }

```

(End of definition for `role-tag` and `new-tag`. These functions are documented on page 20.)



### 3.5 Miscellaneous

**tree-mcid-index-wrong** Used in the tree code, typically indicates the document must be rerun.

```
99 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {tree-mcid-index-wrong}
100   {something-is-wrong-with-the-mcid--rerun}
```

(End of definition for tree-mcid-index-wrong. This function is documented on page 20.)

**sys-no-interwordspace** Currently only pdf<sub>l</sub>atex and lualatex have some support for real spaces.

```
101 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {sys-no-interwordspace}
102   {engine/output-mode-#1-doesn't-support-the-interword-spaces}
```

(End of definition for sys-no-interwordspace. This function is documented on page 20.)

**\\_\_tag\_check\_typeout\_v:n** A simple logging function. By default is gobbles its argument, but the log-keys sets it to typeout.

```
103 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_check_typeout_v:n \use_none:n
```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_typeout\_v:n.)

**para-hook-count-wrong** At the end of the document we check if the count of para-begin and para-end is identical. If not we issue a warning: this is normally a coding error and and breaks the structure.

```
104 \msg_new:nmmm { tag } {para-hook-count-wrong}
105   {The-number-of-automatic-begin-#1-and-end-#2-#3-para-hooks-differ!}
106   {This-quite-probably-a-coding-error-and-the-structure-will-be-wrong!}
107 </package>
```

(End of definition for para-hook-count-wrong. This function is documented on page 20.)

## 4 Retrieving data

**\tag\_get:n** This retrieves some data. This is a generic command to retrieve data. Currently the only sensible values for the argument are `mc_tag`, `struct_tag` and `struct_num`.

```
108 <base>\cs_new:Npn \tag_get:n #1 { \use:c {__tag_get_data_#1: } }
```

(End of definition for \tag\_get:n. This function is documented on page 17.)

## 5 User conditionals

**\tag\_if\_active\_p:** This tests if tagging is active. This allows packages to add conditional code. The test is true if all booleans, the global and the two local one are true.

**\tag\_if\_active:TF**

```
109 <*base>
110 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tag_if_active: { p , T , TF , F }
111   { \prg_return_false: }
112 </base>
113 <*package>
114 \prg_set_conditional:Npnn \tag_if_active: { p , T , TF , F }
115   {
116     \bool_lazy_all:nTF
117       {
118         {\g__tag_active_struct_bool}
119         {\g__tag_active_mc_bool}
```

```

120         {\g__tag_active_tree_bool}
121         {\l__tag_active_struct_bool}
122         {\l__tag_active_mc_bool}
123     }
124     {
125         \prg_return_true:
126     }
127     {
128         \prg_return_false:
129     }
130 }
131 \endpackage

```

(End of definition for `\tag_if_active:TF`. This function is documented on page 17.)

`\tag_if_box_tagged_p:N` This tests if a box contains tagging commands. It relies on that the code that saved the box correctly set `\l_tag_box_<box number>_tl` to a positive value. The LaTeX commands will do that automatically at some time but it is in the responsibility of the user to ensure that when using low-level code. If the internal command doesn't exist the box is assumed to be untagged.

```

132 \begin{base}
133 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tag_if_box_tagged:N #1 {p,T,F,TF}
134 {
135     \tl_if_exist:cTF {l_tag_box_\int_use:N #1_tl}
136     {
137         \int_compare:nNnTF {0\tl_use:c{l_tag_box_\int_use:N #1_tl}}>{0}
138         { \prg_return_true: }
139         { \prg_return_false: }
140     }
141     {
142         \prg_return_false:
143         % warning??
144     }
145 }
146 \end{base}

```

(End of definition for `\tag_if_box_tagged:NTF`. This function is documented on page 17.)

## 6 Internal checks

These are checks used in various places in the code.

### 6.1 checks for active tagging

`\__tag_check_if_active_mc:TF` This checks if mc are active.

```

\__tag_check_if_active_struct:TF
147 \begin{package}
148 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_active_mc: {T,F,TF}
149 {
150     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF { \g__tag_active_mc_bool } { \l__tag_active_mc_bool }
151     {
152         \prg_return_true:
153     }
154     {

```

```

155         \prg_return_false:
156     }
157 }
158 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_active_struct: {T,F,TF}
159 {
160     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF { \g__tag_active_struct_bool } { \l__tag_active_struct_bool }
161     {
162         \prg_return_true:
163     }
164     {
165         \prg_return_false:
166     }
167 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_if\_active\_mc:TF and \\_\_tag\_check\_if\_active\_struct:TF.)

## 6.2 Checks related to structures

`\__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n` Structures must have a tag, so we check if the S entry is in the property. It is an error if this is missing. The argument is a number. The tests for existence and type is split in structures, as the tags are stored differently to the mc case.

```

168 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n #1 %#1 struct num
169 {
170     \prop_if_in:cnF { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
171     {S}
172     {
173         \msg_error:nn { tag } {struct-missing-tag}
174     }
175 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_structure\_has\_tag:n.)

`\__tag_check_structure_tag:N` This checks if the name of the tag is known, either because it is a standard type or has been rolemapped.

```

176 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_structure_tag:N #1
177 {
178     \prop_if_in:NoF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}
179     {
180         \msg_warning:nne { tag } {role-unknown-tag} {#1}
181     }
182 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_structure\_tag:N.)

`\__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n` This info message is issued at a closing structure, the use should be guarded by log-level.

```

183 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n #1 %#1 struct num
184 {
185     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
186     {
187         \msg_info:nnn { tag } {struct-show-closing} {#1}
188     }
189 }
190
191 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n {o,e}

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n`.)

`\__tag_check_no_open_struct:` This checks if there is an open structure. It should be used when trying to close a structure. It errors if false.

```
192 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_no_open_struct:
193   {
194     \msg_error:nn { tag } {struct-faulty-nesting}
195   }
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_check_no_open_struct:.`)

`\__tag_check_struct_used:n` This checks if a stashed structure has already been used.

```
196 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_struct_used:n #1 % #1 label
197   {
198     \prop_get:cnNT
199       {g__tag_struct\_property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{unknown}_prop}
200       {P}
201     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
202     {
203       \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice} {#1}
204     }
205   }
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_check_struct_used:n`.)

### 6.3 Checks related to roles

`\__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn` This check is used when defining a new role mapping.

```
206 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn #1 #2 % #1 tag, #2 role
207   {
208     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
209     {
210       \msg_error:nnn { tag } {role-missing} {#1}
211     }
212     {
213       \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#2} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
214       {
215         \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
216         {
217           \msg_info:nnnn { tag } {role-tag} {#1} {#2}
218         }
219       }
220       {
221         \msg_error:nnn { tag } {role-unknown} {#2}
222       }
223     }
224   }
```

Similar with a namespace

```
225 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nnn #1 #2 #3 % #1 tag/NS, #2 role #3 namespace
226   {
227     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
228     {
229       \msg_error:nnn { tag } {role-missing} {#1}
```

```

230     }
231     {
232     \prop_get:cnNTF { g__tag_role_NS_#3_prop } {#2} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
233     {
234     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
235     {
236     \msg_info:nnnn { tag } {role-tag} {#1} {#2/#3}
237     }
238     }
239     {
240     \msg_error:nnn { tag } {role-unknown} {#2/#3}
241     }
242     }
243 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn`.)

## 6.4 Check related to mc-chunks

`\__tag_check_mc_if_nested:` Two tests if a mc is currently open. One for the true (for begin code), one for the false part (for end code).

`\__tag_check_mc_if_open:`

```

244 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
245 {
246   \__tag_mc_if_in:T
247   {
248     \msg_warning:nne { tag } {mc-nested} { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
249   }
250 }
251
252 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_if_open:
253 {
254   \__tag_mc_if_in:F
255   {
256     \msg_warning:nne { tag } {mc-not-open} { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
257   }
258 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_check_mc_if_nested:` and `\__tag_check_mc_if_open:.`)

`\__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn`

This creates an information message if mc's are pushed or popped. The first argument is a word (pushed or popped), the second the tag name. With larger log-level the stack is shown too.

```

259 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn #1 #2
260 {
261   \int_compare:nNnT
262     { \l__tag_loglevel_int } = { 2 }
263     { \msg_info:nne {tag}{mc-#1}{#2} }
264   \int_compare:nNnT
265     { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > { 2 }
266     {
267       \msg_info:nne {tag}{mc-#1}{#2}
268       \seq_log:N \g__tag_mc_stack_seq
269     }
270 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn`.)

`\__tag_check_mc_tag:N` This checks if the mc has a (known) tag.

```
271 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_tag:N #1 % #1 is var with a tag name in it
272 {
273   \tl_if_empty:NT #1
274   {
275     \msg_error:nne { tag } {mc-tag-missing} { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
276   }
277   \prop_if_in:NoF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}
278   {
279     \msg_warning:nne { tag } {role-unknown-tag} {#1}
280   }
281 }
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_check_mc_tag:N`.)

`\g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray` This variable holds the list of used mc numbers. Everytime we store a mc-number we will add one the relevant array index. If everything is right at the end there should be only 1 until the max count of the mcid. 2 indicates that one mcid was used twice, 0 that we lost one. In engines other than luatex the total number of all intarray entries are restricted so we use only a rather small value of 65536, and we initialize the array only at first used, guarded by the log-level. This check is probably only needed for debugging. TODO does this really make sense to check? When can it happen??

`\__tag_check_init_mc_used:`

```
282 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_init_mc_used:
283 {
284   \intarray_new:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray { 65536 }
285   \cs_gset_eq:NN \__tag_check_init_mc_used: \prg_do_nothing:
286 }
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray` and `\__tag_check_init_mc_used:.`)

`\__tag_check_mc_used:n` This checks if a mc is used twice.

```
287 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_used:n #1 % #1 mcid absnt
288 {
289   \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 2 }
290   {
291     \__tag_check_init_mc_used:
292     \intarray_gset:Nnn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray
293     {#1}
294     { \intarray_item:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray {#1} + 1 }
295     \int_compare:nNnT
296     {
297       \intarray_item:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray {#1}
298     }
299     >
300     { 1 }
301     {
302       \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {mc-used-twice} {#1}
303     }
304   }
305 }
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_check_mc_used:n`.)

`\_tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:` This allows to show the mc on a page. Currently unused.

```
306 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:
307 {
308   \tl_set:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_tl
309     {
310       \_tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn
311         {abspage}
312         {-1}
313     }
314   \int_step_inline:nnnn {1}{1}
315     {
316       \l__tag_tmpa_tl
317     }
318     {
319       \seq_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
320       \int_step_inline:nnnn
321         {1}
322         {1}
323         {
324           \_tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn
325             {tagmcabs}
326             {-1}
327         }
328         {
329           \int_compare:nT
330             {
331               \property_ref:enn
332                 {mcid-###1}
333                 {tagabspage}
334                 {-1}
335             }
336             =
337             ##1
338         }
339       \seq_gput_right:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_seq
340         {
341           Page##1-###1-
342           \property_ref:enn
343             {mcid-###1}
344             {tagmcid}
345             {-1}
346         }
347     }
348   }
349   \seq_show:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
350 }
351 }
```

*(End of definition for `\_tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:.`)*

## 6.5 Checks related to the state of MC on a page or in a split stream

The following checks are currently only usable in generic mode as they rely on the marks defined in the mc-generic module. They are used to detect if a mc-chunk has been split by a page break or similar and additional end/begin commands are needed.

`\_tag\_check\_mc\_in\_galley\_p:` At first we need a test to decide if `\tag\_mc\_begin:n` (tmb) and `\tag\_mc\_end:` (tme)  
`\_tag\_check\_mc\_in\_galley:TF` has been used at all on the current galley. As each command issues two slightly different marks we can do it by comparing firstmarks and botmarks. The test assumes that the marks have been already mapped into the sequence with `\@@\_mc\_get\_marks:`. As `\seq\_if\_eq:NNTF` doesn't exist we use the `tl`-test.

```

352 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_in\_galley: { T,F,TF }
353 {
354   \tl\_if\_eq:NNTF \l\_tag\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq \l\_tag\_mc\_botmarks\_seq
355   { \prg\_return\_false: }
356   { \prg\_return\_true: }
357 }

```

*(End of definition for \\_tag\\_check\\_if\\_mc\\_in\\_galley:TF.)*

`\_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tmb\_missing\_p:` This checks if a extra top mark (“extra-tmb”) is needed. According to the analysis this  
`\_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tmb\_missing:TF` the case if the firstmarks start with `e-` or `b+`. Like above we assume that the marks content is already in the seq's.

```

358 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tmb\_missing: { T,F,TF }
359 {
360   \bool\_if:nTF
361   {
362     \str\_if\_eq\_p:ee {\seq\_item:Nn \l\_tag\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq {1}}{e-}
363     ||
364     \str\_if\_eq\_p:ee {\seq\_item:Nn \l\_tag\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq {1}}{b+}
365   }
366   { \prg\_return\_true: }
367   { \prg\_return\_false: }
368 }

```

*(End of definition for \\_tag\\_check\\_if\\_mc\\_tmb\\_missing:TF.)*

`\_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tme\_missing\_p:` This checks if a extra bottom mark (“extra-tme”) is needed. According to the analysis  
`\_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tme\_missing:TF` this the case if the botmarks starts with `b+`. Like above we assume that the marks content is already in the seq's.

```

369 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tme\_missing: { T,F,TF }
370 {
371   \str\_if\_eq:eeTF {\seq\_item:Nn \l\_tag\_mc\_botmarks\_seq {1}}{b+}
372   { \prg\_return\_true: }
373   { \prg\_return\_false: }
374 }

```

*(End of definition for \\_tag\\_check\\_if\\_mc\\_tme\\_missing:TF.)*

```

375 </package>

```

```

376 <*debug>

```



Code for tagpdf-debug. This will probably change over time. At first something for the mc commands.

```

377 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {mc-begin} { MC~begin~#1~with~options:~\tl_to_str:n{#2}~[\msg_line_context:] }
378 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {mc-end} { MC~end~#1~[\msg_line_context:] }
379
380 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_mc_begin_insert:n #1
381 {
382   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
383   {
384     \msg_note:nnnn { tag / debug } {mc-begin} {inserted} { #1 }
385   }
386 }
387 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_mc_begin_ignore:n #1
388 {
389   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
390   {
391     \msg_note:nnnn { tag / debug } {mc-begin} {ignored} { #1 }
392   }
393 }
394 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_mc_end_insert:
395 {
396   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
397   {
398     \msg_note:nnn { tag / debug } {mc-end} {inserted}
399   }
400 }
401 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_mc_end_ignore:
402 {
403   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
404   {
405     \msg_note:nnn { tag / debug } {mc-end} {ignored}
406   }
407 }

```

And now something for the structures

```

408 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-begin}
409 {
410   Struct~\tag_get:n{struct_num}~begin~#1~with~options:~\tl_to_str:n{#2}~\[\msg_line_context:]
411 }
412 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-end}
413 {
414   Struct~end~#1~[\msg_line_context:]
415 }
416 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-end-wrong}
417 {
418   Struct~end~'#1'~doesn't~fit~start~'#2'~[\msg_line_context:]
419 }
420
421 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_begin_insert:n #1
422 {
423   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
424   {
425     \msg_note:nnnn { tag / debug } {struct-begin} {inserted} { #1 }
426     \seq_log:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq

```

```

427     }
428   }
429 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_begin_ignore:n #1
430 {
431   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
432   {
433     \msg_note:nnnn { tag / debug } {struct-begin } {ignored} { #1 }
434   }
435 }
436 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_end_insert:
437 {
438   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
439   {
440     \msg_note:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-end} {inserted}
441     \seq_log:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
442   }
443 }
444 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_end_ignore:
445 {
446   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
447   {
448     \msg_note:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-end } {ignored}
449   }
450 }
451 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_end_check:n #1
452 {
453   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
454   {
455     \seq_get:NNT \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
456     {
457       \str_if_eq:eeF
458       {#1}
459       {\exp_last_unbraced:NV\use_i:nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl}
460       {
461         \msg_warning:nnee { tag/debug }{ struct-end-wrong }
462         {#1}
463         {\exp_last_unbraced:NV\use_i:nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl}
464       }
465     }
466   }
467 }

```

This tracks tag suspend and resume. The tag-suspend message should go before the int is increased. The tag-resume message after the int is decreased.

```

468 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {tag-suspend}
469 {
470   \int_if_zero:nTF
471   {#1}
472   {Tagging~suspended}
473   {Tagging~(not)~suspended~(already-inactive)}\
474   level:~#1~==>~\int_eval:n{#1+1}\tl_if_empty:nF{#2}{,~label:~#2}~[\msg_line_context:]
475 }
476 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {tag-resume}
477 {

```

```

478 \int_if_zero:nTF
479   {#1}
480   {Tagging~resumed}
481   {Tagging~(not)~resumed}\\
482   level:~\int_eval:n{#1+1}~==>~#1\tl_if_empty:nF{#2}{,~label:~#2}~[\msg_line_context:]
483 }
484 </debug>

```

## 6.6 Benchmarks

It doesn't make much sense to do benchmarks in debug mode or in combination with a log-level as this would slow down the compilation. So we add simple commands that can be activated if `l3benchmark` has been loaded. TODO: is a warning needed?

```

485 <*package>
486 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_benchmark_tic: {}
487 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_benchmark_toc: {}
488 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_check_benchmark_on:
489 {
490   \cs_if_exist:NT \benchmark_tic:
491   {
492     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_check_benchmark_tic: \benchmark_tic:
493     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_check_benchmark_toc: \benchmark_toc:
494   }
495 }
496 </package>

```

## Part III

# The `tagpdf-user` module

## Code related to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X2e user commands and document commands Part of the `tagpdf` package

### 1 Setup commands

---

`\tagpdfsetup` `\tagpdfsetup{⟨key val list⟩}`

This is the main setup command to adapt the behaviour of `tagpdf`. It can be used in the preamble and in the document (but not all keys make sense there).

---

`activate` (`setup-key`) And additional setup key which combine the other activate keys `activate/mc`, `activate/tree`, `activate/struct` and additionally adds a document structure.

---

`\tag_tool:n` `\tag_tool:n{⟨key val⟩}`  
`\tagtool`

The tagging of basic document elements will require a variety of small commands to configure and adapt the tagging. This command will collect them under a command interface. The argument is *one* key-value like string. This is work in progress and both syntax, known arguments and implementation can change!

### 2 Commands related to mc-chunks

---

`\tagmcbegin` `\tagmcbegin {⟨key-val⟩}`  
`\tagmchend` `\tagmchend`  
`\tagmcuse` `\tagmcuse{⟨label⟩}`

These are wrappers around `\tag_mc_begin:n`, `\tag_mc_end:` and `\tag_mc_use:n`. The commands and their argument are documented in the `tagpdf-mc` module. In difference to the `expl3` commands, `\tagmcbegin` issues also an `\ignorespaces`, and `\tagmchend` will issue in horizontal mode an `\unskip`.

---

`\tagmcifinTF` `\tagmcifin {⟨true code⟩}{⟨false code⟩}`

This is a wrapper around `\tag_mc_if_in:TF`. and tests if an mc is open or not. It is mostly of importance for `pdflatex` as `lualatex` doesn't mind much if a mc tag is not correctly closed. Unlike the `expl3` command it is not expandable.

The command is probably not of much use and will perhaps disappear in future versions. It normally makes more sense to push/pop an mc-chunk.

### 3 Commands related to structures

---

<code>\tagstructbegin</code>	<code>\tagstructbegin {⟨key-val⟩}</code>
<code>\tagstructend</code>	<code>\tagstructend</code>
<code>\tagstructuse</code>	<code>\tagstructuse{⟨label⟩}</code>

---

These are direct wrappers around `\tag_struct_begin:n`, `\tag_struct_end:` and `\tag_struct_use:n`. The commands and their argument are documented in the `tagpdf-struct` module.

### 4 Debugging

---

<code>\ShowTagging</code>	<code>\ShowTagging {⟨key-val⟩}</code>
---------------------------	---------------------------------------

---

This is a generic function to output various debugging helps. It not necessarily stops the compilation. The keys and their function are described below.

---

<code>mc-data (show-key)</code>	<code>mc-data = ⟨number⟩</code>
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

---

This key is (currently?) relevant for lua mode only. It shows the data of all mc-chunks created so far. It is accurate only after shipout (and perhaps a second compilation), so typically should be issued after a newpage. The value is a positive integer and sets the first mc-shown. If no value is given, 1 is used and so all mc-chunks created so far are shown.

---

<code>mc-current (show-key)</code>	<code>mc-current</code>
------------------------------------	-------------------------

---

This key shows the number and the tag of the currently open mc-chunk. If no chunk is open it shows only the state of the abs count. It works in all mode, but the output in luamode looks different.

---

<code>mc-marks (show-key)</code>	<code>mc-marks = show use</code>
----------------------------------	----------------------------------

---

This key helps to debug the page marks. It should only be used at shipout in header or footer.

---

<code>struct-stack (show-key)</code>	<code>struct-stack = log show</code>
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

---

This key shows the current structure stack. With `log` the info is only written to the log-file, `show` stops the compilation and shows on the terminal. If no value is used, then the default is `show`.

---

<code>debug/structures (show-key)</code>	<code>debug/structures = ⟨structure number⟩</code>
--	--

---

This key is available only if the `tagpdf-debug` package is loaded and shows all structures starting with the one with the number given by the key.

## 5 Extension commands

The following commands and code parts are not core commands of tagpdf. They either provide work-arounds for missing functionality elsewhere, or do a first step to apply tagpdf commands to document commands.

The commands and keys should be view as experimental!

This part will be regularly revisited to check if the code should go to a better place or can be improved and so can change easily.

### 5.1 Fake space

---

`\pdffakespace` (lua-only) This provides a lua-version of the `\pdffakespace` primitive of pdftex.

### 5.2 Tagging of paragraphs

This makes use of the paragraph hooks in LaTeX to automate the tagging of paragraph. It requires sane paragraph nesting, faulty code, e.g. a missing `\par` at the end of a low-level vbox can highly confuse the tagging. The tags should be carefully checked if this is used.

---

<code>para/tagging</code> (setup-key)	<code>para/tagging = true false</code>
<code>paratagging-show</code> (deprecated)	<code>debug/show=para</code>
<code>paratagging</code> (deprecated)	<code>debug/show=paraOff</code>

---

The `para/tagging` key can be used in `\tagpdfsetup` and enable/disable tagging of paragraphs. `debug/show=para` puts small colored numbers at the begin and end of a paragraph. This is meant as a debugging help. The number are boxes and have a (tiny) height, so they can affect typesetting.

---

`\tagpdfparaOn` These commands allow to enable/disable para tagging too and are a bit faster than `\tagpdfparaOff` `\tagpdfsetup`. But I'm not sure if the names are good.

---

`\tagpdfsuppressmarks` This command allows to suppress the creation of the marks. It takes an argument which should normally be one of the mc-commands, puts a group around it and suppress the marks creation in this group. This command should be used if the begin and end command are at different boxing levels. E.g.

```
\@hangfrom
{
  \tagstructbegin{tag=H1}%
  \tagmcbegin   {tag=H1}%
  #2
}
{#3\tagpdfsuppressmarks{\tagmcbegin}\tagstructend}%
```

### 5.3 Header and footer

Header and footer are automatically tagged as artifact: They are surrounded by an artifact-mc and inside tagging is stopped. If some real content is in the header and footer, tagging must be restarted there explicitly. The behaviour can be changed with the following key. The key accepts the values `true` (the default), `false` which disables the header tagging code. This can be useful if the page style is empty (it then avoids empty mc-chunks) or if the head and foot should be tagged in some special way. The last value, `pagination`, is like `true` but additionally adds an artifact structure with an `pagination` attribute.

---

```
page/exclude-header-footer (setup-key) page/exclude-header-footer = true|false|pagination
```

---

### 5.4 Link tagging

Links need a special structure and cross reference system. This is added through hooks of the `l3pdfannot` module and will work automatically if tagging is activated.

Links should (probably) have an alternative text in the `Contents` key. It is unclear which text this should be and how to get it. Currently the code simply adds the fix texts `url` and `ref`. Another text can be added by changing the dictionary value:

```
\pdfannot_dict_put:nnn
{ link/GoTo }
{ Contents }
{ (ref) }
```

## 6 Socket support

---

```
\tag_socket_use:n \tag_socket_use:n {<socket name>}
\tag_socket_use:nn \tag_socket_use:nn {<socket name>} {<socket argument>}
\UseTaggingSocket \tag_socket_use:nnn {<socket name>} {<socket argument>} {<socket argument>}
\tag_socket_use_expandable:n {<socket name>}
\UseTaggingSocket {<socket name>}
\UseTaggingSocket {<socket name>} {<socket argument>}
\UseTaggingSocket {<socket name>} {<socket argument>}{<socket argument>}
```

---

Given that we sometimes have to suspend tagging, it would be fairly inefficient to put different plugs into these sockets whenever that happens. We therefore offer `\UseTaggingSocket` which is like `\UseSocket` except that it expects a socket starting with `tagsupport/` but the socket name is specified without this prefix, i.e.,

```
\UseTaggingSocket{foo} → \UseSocket{tagsupport/foo}
```

Beside being slightly shorter, the big advantage is that this way we can change `\UseTaggingSocket` to do nothing by switching a boolean instead of changing the plugs of the tagging support sockets back and forth.

Usually, these sockets have (beside the default plug defined for every socket) one additional plug defined and directly assigned. This plug is used when tagging is active.

There may be more plugs, e.g., tagging with special debugging or special behaviour depending on the class or PDF version etc., but right now it is usually just on or off.

When tagging is suspended they all have the same predefined behaviour: The sockets with zero arguments do nothing. The sockets with one argument gobble their argument. The sockets with two arguments will drop their first argument and pass the second unchanged.

It is possible to use the tagging support sockets with `\UseSocket` directly, but in this case the socket remains active if e.g. `\SuspendTagging` is in force. There may be reasons for doing that but in general we expect to always use `\UseTaggingSocket`.

For special cases like in some `\halign` contexts we need a fully expandable version of the command. For these cases, `\UseExpandableTaggingSocket` can be used. To allow being expandable, it does not output any debugging information if `\DebugSocketsOn` is in effect and therefore should be avoided whenever possible.

The L3 programming layer versions `\tag_socket_use_expandable:n`, `\tag_socket_use:n`, and `\tag_socket_use:nn`, `\tag_socket_use:nnn` are slightly more efficient than `\UseTaggingSocket` because they do not have to determine how many arguments the socket takes when disabling it.

## 7 User commands and extensions of document commands

```

1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-user} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4   {tagpdf - user commands}
5 </header>

```

## 8 Setup and preamble commands

`\tagpdfsetup`

```

6 <base>\NewDocumentCommand \tagpdfsetup { m }{}
7 <*package>
8 \RenewDocumentCommand \tagpdfsetup { m }
9   {
10     \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup } { #1 }
11   }
12 </package>

```

*(End of definition for `\tagpdfsetup`. This function is documented on page 36.)*

`\tag_tool:n` This is a first definition of the tool command. Currently it uses key-val, but this should be probably be flattened to speed it up.

`\tagtool`

```

13 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn\tag_tool:n #1 {}
14 <base>\cs_set_eq:NN\tagtool\tag_tool:n
15 <*package>
16 \cs_set_protected:Npn\tag_tool:n #1
17   {
18     \tag_if_active:T { \keys_set:nn {tag / tool}{#1} }
19   }
20 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagtool\tag_tool:n
21 </package>

```



(End of definition for `\tag_tool:n` and `\tagtool`. These functions are documented on page 36.)

## 9 Commands for the mc-chunks

```
\tagmcbegin
\tagmcbegin 22 < *base >
\tagmcbegin 23 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbegin { m }
\tagmcbegin 24 {
\tagmcbegin 25   \tag_mc_begin:n {#1}
\tagmcbegin 26 }
\tagmcbegin 27
\tagmcbegin 28
\tagmcbegin 29 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbegin { }
\tagmcbegin 30 {
\tagmcbegin 31   \tag_mc_end:
\tagmcbegin 32 }
\tagmcbegin 33
\tagmcbegin 34 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbegin { m }
\tagmcbegin 35 {
\tagmcbegin 36   \tag_mc_use:n {#1}
\tagmcbegin 37 }
\tagmcbegin 38 < /base >
```

(End of definition for `\tagmcbegin`, `\tagmcbegin`, and `\tagmcbegin`. These functions are documented on page 36.)

`\tagmcbeginTF` This is a wrapper around `\tag_mc_if_in:` and tests if an mc is open or not. It is mostly of importance for pdf<sub>l</sub>atex as lua<sub>l</sub>atex doesn't mind much if a mc tag is not correctly closed. Unlike the expl3 command it is not expandable.

```
39 < *package >
40 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbeginTF { m m }
41 {
42   \tag_mc_if_in:TF { #1 } { #2 }
43 }
44 < /package >
```

(End of definition for `\tagmcbeginTF`. This function is documented on page 36.)

## 10 Commands for the structure

`\tagstructbegin` These are structure related user commands. There are direct wrapper around the expl3 variants.

```
\tagstructbegin 45 < *base >
\tagstructbegin 46 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructbegin { m }
\tagstructbegin 47 {
\tagstructbegin 48   \tag_struct_begin:n {#1}
\tagstructbegin 49 }
\tagstructbegin 50
\tagstructbegin 51 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructbegin { }
\tagstructbegin 52 {
\tagstructbegin 53   \tag_struct_end:
\tagstructbegin 54 }
```

```

55
56 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructure { m }
57   {
58     \tag_struct_use:n {#1}
59   }
60 </base>

```

(End of definition for `\tagstructbegin`, `\tagstructend`, and `\tagstructure`. These functions are documented on page 37.)

## 11 Socket support

Until we can be sure that the kernel defines the commands we provide them before redefining them: The expandable version will only work correctly after the 2024-11-01 release.

```

61 <*base>
62 \providecommand\tag_socket_use:n[1]{}
63 \providecommand\tag_socket_use:nn[2]{}
64 \providecommand\tag_socket_use:nnn[3]{}
65 \providecommand\tag_socket_use_expandable:n[1]{}
66 \providecommand\socket_use_expandable:nw [1] {
67   \use:c { __socket_#1_plug_ \str_use:c { l__socket_#1_plug_str } :w }
68 }
69 \providecommand\UseTaggingSocket[1]{}
70 \providecommand\UseExpandableTaggingSocket[1]{}
71 </base>

```

```

\tag_socket_use:n
\tag_socket_use:nn 72 <*package>
\tag_socket_use:nnn 73 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_socket_use:n #1
\UseTaggingSocket 74   {
\tag_socket_use_expandable:n 75   \bool_if:NT \l__tag_active_socket_bool
\UseExpandableTaggingSocket 76     { \socket_use:n {tagsupport/#1} }
77   }
78 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_socket_use:nn #1#2
79   {
80     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_active_socket_bool
81       { \socket_use:nn {tagsupport/#1} {#2} }
82   }
83 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_socket_use:nnn #1#2#3
84   {
85     \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_active_socket_bool
86       { \socket_use:nnn {tagsupport/#1} {#2} {#3} }
87       { #3 }
88   }
89 \cs_set:Npn \tag_socket_use_expandable:n #1
90   {
91     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_active_socket_bool
92       { \socket_use_expandable:n {tagsupport/#1} }
93   }

```

```

94 \cs_set_protected:Npn \UseTaggingSocket #1
95   {
96     \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_active_socket_bool
97       { \socket_use:nw {tagsupport/#1} }
98       {
99         \int_case:nnF
100           { \int_use:c { c__socket_tagsupport/#1_args_int } }
101           {
102             0 \prg_do_nothing:
103             1 \use_none:n
104             2 \use_ii:nn

```

We do not expect tagging sockets with more than one or two arguments, so for now we only provide those.

```

105     }
106     \ERRORusetaggingsocket
107   }
108 }
109 \cs_set:Npn \UseExpandableTaggingSocket #1
110   {
111     \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_active_socket_bool
112       { \socket_use_expandable:nw {tagsupport/#1} }
113       {
114         \int_case:nnF
115           { \int_use:c { c__socket_tagsupport/#1_args_int } }
116           {
117             0 \prg_do_nothing:
118             1 \use_none:n
119             2 \use_ii:nn

```

We do not expect tagging sockets with more than one or two arguments, so for now we only provide those.

```

120     }
121     \ERRORusetaggingsocket
122   }
123 }
124 </package>

```

*(End of definition for \tag\_socket\_use:n and others. These functions are documented on page 39.)*

## 12 Debugging

**\ShowTagging** This is a generic command for various show commands. It takes a keyval list, the various keys are implemented below.

```

125 <*package>
126 \NewDocumentCommand\ShowTagging { m }
127   {
128     \keys_set:nn { __tag / show }{ #1}
129   }
130 }

```

*(End of definition for \ShowTagging. This function is documented on page 37.)*

**mc-data (show-key)** This key is (currently?) relevant for lua mode only. It shows the data of all mc-chunks created so far. It is accurate only after shipout, so typically should be issued after a newpage. With the optional argument the minimal number can be set.

```

131 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
132 {
133   mc-data .code:n =
134   {
135     \sys_if_engine luatex:T
136     {
137       \lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data(#1,\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,0)}
138     }
139   }
140   ,mc-data .default:n = 1
141 }
142

```

*(End of definition for mc-data (show-key). This function is documented on page 37.)*

**mc-current (show-key)** This shows some info about the current mc-chunk. It works in generic and lua-mode.

```

143 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
144 { mc-current .code:n =
145   {
146     \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
147     {
148       \sys_if_engine luatex:T
149       {
150         \int_compare:nNnTF
151         { -2147483647 }
152         =
153         {
154           \lua_now:e
155           {
156             tex.print
157             (tex.getattribute
158              (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr))
159           }
160         }
161         {
162           \lua_now:e
163           {
164             ltx.__tag.trace.log
165             (
166               "mc-current:~no~MC~open,~current~absent
167               =\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:"
168               ,0
169             )
170             texio.write_nl("")
171           }
172         }
173         {
174           \lua_now:e
175           {
176             ltx.__tag.trace.log
177             (

```

```

178         "mc-current:~absent=~\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:=="
179         ..
180         tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr)
181         ..
182         "~=>tag="
183         ..
184         tostring
185         (ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from
186         (tex.getattribute
187         (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)))
188         ..
189         "="
190         ..
191         tex.getattribute
192         (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)
193         ,0
194         )
195         texio.write_nl("")
196     }
197 }
198 }
199 }
200 {
201     \msg_note:nn{ tag }{ mc-current }
202 }
203 }
204 }

```

*(End of definition for mc-current (show-key). This function is documented on page 37.)*

### mc-marks (show-key)

It maps the mc-marks into the sequences and then shows them. This allows to inspect the first and last mc-Mark on a page. It should only be used in the shipout (header/footer).

```

205 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
206 {
207     mc-marks .choice: ,
208     mc-marks / show .code:n =
209     {
210         \__tag_mc_get_marks:
211         \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF
212         {
213             \iow_term:n {Marks~from~this~page:~}
214         }
215         {
216             \iow_term:n {Marks~from~a~previous~page:~}
217         }
218         \seq_show:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
219         \seq_show:N \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
220         \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:T
221         {
222             \iow_term:n {BDC~missing~on~this~page!}
223         }
224         \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:T
225         {
226             \iow_term:n {EMC~missing~on~this~page!}

```

```

227     }
228   },
229   mc-marks / use .code:n =
230   {
231     \__tag_mc_get_marks:
232     \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF
233     { Marks~from~this~page:~}
234     { Marks~from~a~previous~page:~}
235     \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {,~}\quad
236     \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {,~}\quad
237     \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:T
238     {
239       BDC~missing~
240     }
241     \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:T
242     {
243       EMC~missing
244     }
245   },
246   mc-marks .default:n = show
247 }

```

(End of definition for mc-marks (show-key). This function is documented on page 37.)

#### struct-stack (show-key)

```

248 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
249 {
250   struct-stack .choice:
251   ,struct-stack / log .code:n = \seq_log:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
252   ,struct-stack / show .code:n = \seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
253   ,struct-stack .default:n = show
254 }
255 </package>

```

(End of definition for struct-stack (show-key). This function is documented on page 37.)

#### debug/structures (show-key)

The following key is available only if the tagpdf-debug package is loaded and shows all structures starting with the one with the number given by the key.

```

256 <*debug>
257 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
258 {
259   ,debug/structures .code:n =
260   {
261     \int_step_inline:nnn{#1}{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
262     {
263       \msg_term:nneeee
264       { tag/debug } { show-struct }
265       { ##1 }
266       {
267         \prop_map_function:cN
268         {g__tag_struct_debug_##1_prop}
269         \msg_show_item_unbraced:nn
270       }
271     } { } { }

```

```

272         \msg_term:nneeee
273         { tag/debug } { show-kids }
274         { ##1 }
275         {
276         \seq_map_function:cN
277         {g__tag_struct_debug_kids_##1_seq}
278         \msg_show_item_unbraced:n
279         }
280         { } { }
281     }
282 }
283 ,debug/structures .default:n = 1
284 }
285 </debug>

```

(End of definition for `debug/structures (show-key)`. This function is documented on page 37.)

## 13 Commands to extend document commands

The following commands and code parts are not core commands of tagpdf. They either provide work-arounds for missing functionality elsewhere, or do a first step to apply tagpdf commands to document commands. This part should be regularly revisited to check if the code should go to a better place or can be improved.

```
286 (*package)
```

### 13.1 Document structure

```

\g__tag_root_default_tl
  activate (setup-key)
activate/socket (setup-key)
287 \tl_new:N\g__tag_root_default_tl
288 \tl_gset:Nn\g__tag_root_default_tl {Document}
289
290 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}{\tagstructbegin{tag=\g__tag_root_default_tl}}
291 \hook_gput_code:nnn{tagpdf/finish/before}{tagpdf}{\tagstructend}
292
293 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup}
294 {
295   activate/socket .bool_set:N = \l__tag_active_socket_bool,
296   activate .code:n =
297   {
298     \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup }
299     { activate/mc,activate/tree,activate/struct,activate/socket }
300     \tl_gset:Nn\g__tag_root_default_tl {#1}
301   },
302   activate .default:n = Document
303 }
304

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_root_default_tl`, `activate (setup-key)`, and `activate/socket (setup-key)`. These functions are documented on page 36.)

## 13.2 Structure destinations

Since TeXlive 2022 pdftex and luatex offer support for structure destinations and the pdfmanagement has backend support for. We activate them if structures are actually created. Structure destinations are actually PDF 2.0 only but they don't harm in older PDF and can improve html export.

```

305 \AddToHook{begindocument/before}
306   {
307     \bool_lazy_and:nnT
308       { \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool }
309       { \g__tag_active_struct_bool }
310     {
311       \tl_set:Nn \l_pdf_current_structure_destination_tl
312         { {__tag/struct}{\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl } }
313       \pdf_activate_indexed_structure_destination:
314     }
315   }

```

## 13.3 Fake space

`\pdffakespace` We need a luatex variant for `\pdffakespace`. This should probably go into the kernel at some time. We also provide a no-op version for dvi mode

```

316 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
317   {
318     \NewDocumentCommand\pdffakespace { }
319     {
320       \__tag_fakespace:
321     }
322   }
323 \providecommand\pdffakespace{}

```

*(End of definition for `\pdffakespace`. This function is documented on page 38.)*

## 13.4 Paratagging

The following are some simple commands to enable/disable paratagging. Probably one should add some checks if we are already in a paragraph.

```

\l__tag_para_bool
\l__tag_para_flattened_bool
\l__tag_para_show_bool
\g__tag_para_begin_int
\g__tag_para_end_int
\g__tag_para_main_begin_int
\g__tag_para_main_end_int
\g__tag_para_main_struct_tl
\l__tag_para_tag_default_tl
\l__tag_para_tag_tl
\l__tag_para_main_tag_tl
\l__tag_para_attr_class_tl
\l__tag_para_main_attr_class_tl

```

At first some variables.

```

324 </package>
325 <base>\bool_new:N \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
326 <base>\bool_new:N \l__tag_para_bool
327 <*package>
328 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_begin_int
329 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_end_int
330 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_main_begin_int
331 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_main_end_int
332 \tl_new:N \g__tag_para_main_struct_tl
333 \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_para_main_struct_tl {1}
334 \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_tag_default_tl
335 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_para_tag_default_tl { text }
336 \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_tag_tl

```

this will hold the structure number of the current text-unit.



```

337 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_para_tag_tl { \l__tag_para_tag_default_tl }
338 \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl
339 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl {text-unit}

```

this is perhaps already defined by the block code

```

340 \tl_if_exist:NF \l__tag_para_attr_class_tl
341 { \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_attr_class_tl }
342 \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_main_attr_class_tl

```

*(End of definition for \l\_\_tag\_para\_bool and others.)*

`\__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:` The global para counter should be set through commands so that `\tag_stop:` can stop them.

```

\__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
\__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
\__tag_gincr_para_end_int:
343 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
344 {
345   \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_main_begin_int
346 }
347 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
348 {
349   \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_begin_int
350 }
351 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
352 {
353   \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_main_end_int
354 }
355 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_end_int:
356 {
357   \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_end_int
358 }

```

*(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_gincr\_para\_main\_begin\_int: and others.)*

```

\__tag_start_para_ints:
\__tag_stop_para_ints:
359 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_start_para_ints:
360 {
361   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
362   {
363     \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_main_begin_int
364   }
365   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
366   {
367     \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_begin_int
368   }
369   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
370   {
371     \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_main_end_int
372   }
373   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_end_int:
374   {
375     \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_end_int
376   }
377 }
378 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_stop_para_ints:
379 {
380   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:\prg_do_nothing:

```

```

381 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int: \prg_do_nothing:
382 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int: \prg_do_nothing:
383 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_gincr_para_end_int: \prg_do_nothing:
384 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_start\_para\_ints: and \\_\_tag\_stop\_para\_ints:.)

We want to be able to inspect the current para main structure, so we need a command to store its structure number

\\_tag\_para\_main\_store\_struct:

```

385 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_para_main_store_struct:
386 {
387   \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_para_main_struct_tl {\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
388 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_para\_main\_store\_struct:.)

TEMPORARY FIX (2023-11-17). Until latex-lab is updated we must adapt a sec command:

```

389 \AddToHook{package/latex-lab-testphase-sec/after}
390 {
391   \cs_set_protected:Npn \@kernel@tag@hangfrom #1
392   {
393     \tagstructbegin{tag=\l__tag_para_tag_tl}
394     \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
395     \tagstructbegin{tag=Lbl}
396     \setbox\@tempboxa
397     \hbox
398     {
399       \bool_lazy_and:nnT
400       {\tag_if_active_p:}
401       {\g__tag_mode_lua_bool}
402       {\tagmcbegin{tag=Lbl}}
403       {#1}
404     }
405     \tag_suspend:n{hangfrom}
406     \hangindent \wd\@tempboxa\noindent
407     \tag_resume:n{hangfrom}
408     \tagmcbegin{}\box\@tempboxa\tagmcbegin\tagstructend\tagmcbegin{}
409   }
410 }

```

and one temporary adaptations for the block module:

```

411 \AddToHook{package/latex-lab-testphase-block/after}
412 {
413   \tl_if_exist:NT \l_tag_para_attr_class_tl
414   {
415     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_para_attr_class_tl { \l_tag_para_attr_class_tl }
416   }
417 }
418

```

**para/tagging (setup-key)** These keys enable/disable locally paratagging. Paragraphs are typically tagged with two structure: A main structure around the whole paragraph, and inner structures around the various chunks. Debugging can be activated locally with `debug/show=para`, this can affect the typesetting as the small numbers are boxes and they have a (small) height.

`para/tag (setup-key)`

`para/maintag (setup-key)`

`para/tagging (tool-key)`

`para/tag (tool-key)`

`para/maintag (tool-key)`

`para/flattened (tool-key)`

`unittag (deprecated)`

`para-flattened (deprecated)`

**paratagging (deprecated)**

`paratagging-show (deprecated)`

`paratag (deprecated)`

Debugging can be deactivated with `debug/show=paraOff`. The `para/tag` key sets the tag used by the inner structure, `para/maintag` the tag of the outer structure, both can also be changed with `\tag_tool:n`

```

419 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
420 {
421   para/tagging      .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
422   debug/show/para  .code:n = {\bool_set_true:N \l__tag_para_show_bool},
423   debug/show/paraOff .code:n = {\bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_show_bool},
424   para/tag         .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_tag_tl,
425   para/maintag     .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
426   para/flattened   .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
427 }
428 \keys_define:nn { tag / tool}
429 {
430   para/tagging     .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
431   para/tag         .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_tag_tl,
432   para/maintag     .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
433   para/flattened   .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
434 }

```

the deprecated names

```

435 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
436 {
437   paratagging      .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
438   paratagging-show .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_show_bool,
439   paratag          .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_tag_tl
440 }
441 \keys_define:nn { tag / tool}
442 {
443   para      .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
444   paratag   .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_tag_tl,
445   unittag   .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
446   para-flattened .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
447 }

```

*(End of definition for `para/tagging` (setup-key) and others. These functions are documented on page 38.)*

Helper command for debugging:

```

448 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_para_begin_show:nn #1 #2
449   %#1 color, #2 prefix
450   {
451     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_show_bool
452     {
453       \tag_mc_begin:n{artifact}
454       \llap{\color_select:n{#1}\tiny#2\int_use:N\g__tag_para_begin_int\ }
455       \tag_mc_end:
456     }
457   }
458
459 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_para_end_show:nn #1 #2
460   %#1 color, #2 prefix
461   {
462     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_show_bool
463     {

```

```

464     \tag_mc_begin:n{artifact}
465     \rlap{\color_select:n{#1}\tiny\ #2\int_use:N\g__tag_para_end_int}
466     \tag_mc_end:
467   }
468 }

```

The para/begin and para/end code. We have two variants here: a simpler one, which must be used if the block code is not used (and so probably will disappear at some time) and a more sophisticated one that must be used if the block code is used. It is possible that we will need more variants, so we setup a socket so that the code can be easily switched. This code should move into ltagging, so we add a test for the transition.

```

469 \str_if_exist:cF { l__socket_tagssupport/para/begin_plug_str }
470 {
471   \socket_new:nn      {tagssupport/para/begin}{0}
472   \socket_new:nn      {tagssupport/para/end}{0}
473
474   \socket_new_plug:nnn{tagssupport/para/begin}{plain}
475   {
476     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool
477     {
478       \bool_if:NF \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
479       {
480         \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
481         \tag_struct_begin:n
482         {
483           tag=\l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
484         }
485         \__tag_para_main_store_struct:
486       }
487       \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
488       \tag_struct_begin:n {tag=\l__tag_para_tag_tl}
489       \__tag_check_para_begin_show:nn {green}{ }
490       \tag_mc_begin:n { }
491     }
492   }
493   \socket_new_plug:nnn{tagssupport/para/begin}{block}
494   {
495     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool
496     {
497       \legacy_if:nF { @inlabel }
498       {
499         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n
500         {=>~ @endpe = \legacy_if:nTF { @endpe }{true}{false} \on@line }
501         \legacy_if:nF { @endpe }
502         {
503           \bool_if:NF \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
504           {
505             \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
506             \tag_struct_begin:n
507             {
508               tag=\l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
509               attribute-class=\l__tag_para_main_attr_class_tl,
510             }
511             \__tag_para_main_store_struct:

```

```

512         }
513     }
514     \_tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
515     \_tag_check_typeout_v:n {==>~increment~ P \on@line }
516     \tag_struct_begin:n
517     {
518         tag=\l__tag_para_tag_tl
519         ,attribute-class=\l__tag_para_attr_class_tl
520     }
521     \_tag_check_para_begin_show:nn {green}{\PARALABEL}
522     \tag_mc_begin:n {}
523 }
524 }
525 }

```

there was no real difference between the original and in the block variant, only a debug message. We therefore define only a plain variant.

```

526     \socket_new_plug:nnn{tagsupport/para/end}{plain}
527     {
528         \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool
529         {
530             \_tag_gincr_para_end_int:
531             \_tag_check_typeout_v:n {==>~increment~ /P \on@line }
532             \tag_mc_end:
533             \_tag_check_para_end_show:nn {red}{}
534             \tag_struct_end:
535             \bool_if:NF \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
536             {
537                 \_tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
538                 \tag_struct_end:
539             }
540         }
541     }
542 }

```

By default we assign the plain plug:

```

543 \socket_assign_plug:nn { tagsupport/para/begin}{plain}
544 \socket_assign_plug:nn { tagsupport/para/end}{plain}

```

And use the sockets in the hooks. Once tagging sockets exist, this can be adapted.

```

545 \AddToHook{para/begin}{ \socket_use:n { tagsupport/para/begin }
546 }
547 \AddToHook{para/end} { \socket_use:n { tagsupport/para/end } }

```

If the block code is loaded we must ensure that it doesn't overwrite the hook again. And we must reassign the para/begin plug. This can go once the block code no longer tries to adapt the hooks.

```

548 \AddToHook{package/latex-lab-testphase-block/after}
549 {
550     \RemoveFromHook{para/begin}[tagpdf]
551     \RemoveFromHook{para/end}[latex-lab-testphase-block]
552     \AddToHook{para/begin}[tagpdf]
553     {
554         \socket_use:n { tagsupport/para/begin }
555     }

```

```

556 \AddToHook{para/end}[tagpdf]
557   {
558     \socket_use:n { tagsupport/para/end }
559   }
560 \socket_assign_plug:nn { tagsupport/para/begin}{block}
561 }
562

```

We check the para count at the end. If tagging is not active it is not a error, but we issue a warning as it perhaps indicates that the testphase code didn't guard everything correctly.

```

563 \AddToHook{enddocument/info}
564 {
565   \tag_if_active:F
566   {
567     \msg_redirect_name:nnn { tag } { para-hook-count-wrong } { warning }
568   }
569   \int_compare:nNnF {\g__tag_para_main_begin_int}={\g__tag_para_main_end_int}
570   {
571     \msg_error:nneee
572     {tag}
573     {para-hook-count-wrong}
574     {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_main_begin_int}
575     {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_main_end_int}
576     {text-unit}
577   }
578   \int_compare:nNnF {\g__tag_para_begin_int}={\g__tag_para_end_int}
579   {
580     \msg_error:nneee
581     {tag}
582     {para-hook-count-wrong}
583     {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_begin_int}
584     {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_end_int}
585     {text}
586   }
587 }

```

We need at least the new-or-1 code. In generic mode we also must insert the code to finish the MC-chunks

```

588 \@ifpackageloaded{footmisc}
589   {\PackageWarning{tagpdf}{tagpdf-has-been-loaded-too-late!}} %
590   {\RequirePackage{latex-lab-testphase-new-or-1}}
591
592 \AddToHook{begindocument/before}
593 {
594   \providecommand\@kernel@tagsupport@@makecol{}
595   \providecommand\@kernel@before@cclv{}
596   \bool_if:NF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
597   {
598     \cs_if_exist:NT \@kernel@before@footins
599     {
600       \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@footins
601       { \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \footins {footnote} }
602       \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@cclv
603       {

```

```

604         \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \@cclv {main}
605     }
606 \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@taggsupport@makecol
607 {
608     \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \@outputbox {main}
609 }
610 \tl_if_exist:NT \@mult@ptagging@hook
611 {
612     \tl_put_right:Nn \@mult@ptagging@hook
613     {
614         \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \count@ {multicol}
615     }
616     \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \mult@rightbox {multicol}
617 }
618 }
619 }
620 }
621 }
622 }
623 }
624 }
625 }
626 }
627 </package>

```

`\tagpdfparaOn` This two command switch para mode on and off. `\tagpdfsetup` could be used too but is longer. An alternative is `\tag_tool:n{para/tagging=false}`

`\tagpdfparaOff`

```

628 <base>\newcommand\tagpdfparaOn {}
629 <base>\newcommand\tagpdfparaOff{}
630 <*package>
631 \renewcommand\tagpdfparaOn {\bool_set_true:N \l__tag_para_bool}
632 \renewcommand\tagpdfparaOff{\bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool}

```

*(End of definition for `\tagpdfparaOn` and `\tagpdfparaOff`. These functions are documented on page 38.)*

`\tagpdfsuppressmarks`

This command allows to suppress the creation of the marks. It takes an argument which should normally be one of the mc-commands, puts a group around it and suppress the marks creation in this group. This command should be used if the begin and end command are at different boxing levels. E.g.

```

\@hangfrom
{
  \tagstructbegin{tag=H1}%
  \tagmcbegin {tag=H1}%
  #2
}
{#3\tagpdfsuppressmarks{\tagmcbegin}\tagstructend}%

633 \NewDocumentCommand\tagpdfsuppressmarks{m}
634 {{\use:c{__tag_mc_disable_marks:} #1}}

```

*(End of definition for `\tagpdfsuppressmarks`. This function is documented on page 38.)*

## 13.5 Language support

With the following key the lang variable is set. All structures in the current group will then set this lang variable.

test/lang (setup-key)

```
635 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
636 {
637   text / lang .tl_set:N = \l__tag_struct_lang_tl
638 }
```

(End of definition for test/lang (setup-key). This function is documented on page ??.)

## 13.6 Header and footer

Header and footer should normally be tagged as artifacts. The following code requires the new hooks. For now we allow to disable this function, but probably the code should always there at the end. TODO check if Pagination should be changeable.

```
639 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: {}
640 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: {}
641 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: {}
642 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: {}
643
644 \AddToHook{begindocument}
645 {
646   \cs_if_exist:NT \@kernel@before@head
647   {
648     \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@head {\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:}
649     \tl_put_left:Nn \@kernel@after@head {\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head:}
650     \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@foot {\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:}
651     \tl_put_left:Nn \@kernel@after@foot {\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:}
652   }
653 }
654
655 \bool_new:N \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
656 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
657 {
658   \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool
659   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
660   {
661     \tag_mc_end_push:
662   }
663   {
664     \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool \g__tag_in_mc_bool
665     \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
666   }
667   \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact}
668   \tag_suspend:n{headfoot}
669 }
670 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
671 {
672   \tag_resume:n{headfoot}
673   \tag_mc_end:
674   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
```



```

675     {
676       \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
677     }
678     {
679       \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_in_mc_bool\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
680     }
681   }

```

This version allows to use an Artifact structure

```

682 \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn {__tag/attr/pagination}{/0/Artifact/Type/Pagination}
683 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_begin:n #1
684 {
685   \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool
686   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
687   {
688     \tag_mc_end_push:
689   }
690   {
691     \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool \g__tag_in_mc_bool
692     \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
693   }
694   \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Artifact,attribute-class=__tag/attr/#1}
695   \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact=#1}
696   \tag_suspend:n{headfoot}
697 }
698
699 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_end:
700 {
701   \tag_resume:n{headfoot}
702   \tag_mc_end:
703   \tag_struct_end:
704   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
705   {
706     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
707   }
708   {
709     \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_in_mc_bool\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
710   }
711 }

```

And now the keys

`page/exclude-header-footer` (setup-key)

`exclude-header-footer` (deprecated)

```

712 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
713 {
714   page/exclude-header-footer .choice:,
715   page/exclude-header-footer / true .code:n =
716   {
717     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
718     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
719     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
720     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
721   },
722   page/exclude-header-footer / pagination .code:n =
723   {

```

```

724     \cs_set:Nn \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: { \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_begin:n {p
725     \cs_set:Nn \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: { \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_begin:n {p
726     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_end:
727     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_end:
728   },
729   page/exclude-header-footer / false .code:n =
730   {
731     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: \prg_do_nothing:
732     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: \prg_do_nothing:
733     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \prg_do_nothing:
734     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \prg_do_nothing:
735   },
736   page/exclude-header-footer .default:n = true,
737   page/exclude-header-footer .initial:n = true,

```

deprecated name

```

738   exclude-header-footer .meta:n = { page/exclude-header-footer = {#1} }
739 }

```

*(End of definition for page/exclude-header-footer (setup-key) and exclude-header-footer (deprecated). These functions are documented on page 39.)*

## 13.7 Links

We need to close and reopen mc-chunks around links. Currently we handle URI and GoTo (internal) links. Links should have an alternative text in the Contents key. It is unclear which text this should be and how to get it.

```

740 \hook_gput_code:nnn
741 {pdfannot/link/URI/before}
742 {tagpdf}
743 {
744   \tag_mc_end_push:
745   \tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
746   \tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
747   \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
748     { link/URI }
749     { StructParent }
750     { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
751 }
752
753 \hook_gput_code:nnn
754 {pdfannot/link/URI/after}
755 {tagpdf}
756 {
757   \tag_struct_insert_annot:ee {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
758   \tag_mc_end:
759   \tag_struct_end:
760   \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
761 }
762
763 \hook_gput_code:nnn
764 {pdfannot/link/GoTo/before}
765 {tagpdf}
766 {

```

```

767     \tag_mc_end_push:
768     \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
769     \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
770     \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
771     { link/GoTo }
772     { StructParent }
773     { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
774   }
775
776   \hook_gput_code:nnn
777   {pdfannot/link/GoTo/after}
778   {tagpdf}
779   {
780     \tag_struct_insert_annot:ee {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
781     \tag_mc_end:
782     \tag_struct_end:
783     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
784   }
785
786
787   % "alternative descriptions " for PAX3. How to get better text here??
788   \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn
789   { link/URI }
790   { Contents }
791   { (url) }
792
793   \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn
794   { link/GoTo }
795   { Contents }
796   { (ref) }
797
</package>

```

## Part IV

# The tagpdf-tree module

## Commands trees and main dictionaries

### Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-tree-code} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to writing trees and dictionaries to the pdf}
5 </header>
```

#### 1 Trees, pdfmanagement and finalization code

The code to finish the structure is in a hook. This will perhaps at the end be a kernel hook. TODO check right place for the code The pdfmanagement code is the kernel hook after shipout/lastpage so all code affecting it should be before. Objects can be written later, at least in pdf mode.

```
6 <*package>
7 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
8 {
9   \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_tree_bool
10    {
11      \sys_if_output_pdf:TF
12        {
13          \AddToHook{enddocument/end} { \__tag_finish_structure: }
14        }
15        {
16          \AddToHook{shipout/lastpage} { \__tag_finish_structure: }
17        }
18    }
19 }
```

##### 1.1 Check structure

\\_\_tag\_tree\_final\_checks:

```
20 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_final_checks:
21 {
22   \int_compare:nNnF {\seq_count:N\g__tag_struct_stack_seq}={1}
23   {
24     \msg_warning:nn {tag}{tree-struct-still-open}
25     \int_step_inline:nnn{2}{\seq_count:N\g__tag_struct_stack_seq}
26     {\tag_struct_end:}
27   }
28   \msg_note:nn {tag}{tree-statistic}
29 }
```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_final\_checks:.)

## 1.2 Catalog: MarkInfo and StructTreeRoot and OpenAction

The StructTreeRoot and the MarkInfo entry must be added to the catalog. If there is an OpenAction entry we must update it, so that it contains also a structure destination. We do it late so that we can win, but before the pdfmanagement hook.

```

__tag/struct/1 This is the object for the root object, the StructTreeRoot
30 \pdf_object_new_indexed:nm { __tag/struct }{ 1 }
(End of definition for __tag/struct/1.)

```

```

\g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl We need a variable that indicates which structure is wanted in the OpenAction. By
default we use 2 (the Document structure).
31 \tl_new:N \g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl
32 \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl { 2 }
(End of definition for \g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl.)

```

```

viewer/startstructure (setup-key) We also need an option to setup the start structure. So we setup a key which sets the
variable to the current structure. This still requires hyperref to do most of the job, this
should perhaps be changed.
33 \keys_define:nm { __tag / setup }
34 {
35   viewer/startstructure .code:n =
36   {
37     \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl {#1}
38   }
39   ,viewer/startstructure .default:n = { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
40 }

```

(End of definition for viewer/startstructure (setup-key). This function is documented on page ??.)

The OpenAction should only be updated if it is there. So we inspect the Catalog-prop:

```

41 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_update_openaction:
42 {
43   \prop_get:cnNT
44   { \__kernel_pdfdict_name:n { g__pdf_Core/Catalog } }
45   {OpenAction}
46   \l__tag_tmpa_tl
47   {

```

we only do something if the OpenAction is an array (as set by hyperref) in other cases we hope that the author knows what they did.

```

48   \tl_if_head_eq_charcode:eNT { \tl_trim_spaces:V\l__tag_tmpa_tl } [ %]
49   {
50     \seq_set_split:NnV\l__tag_tmpa_seq{/}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
51     \pdfmanagement_add:nne {Catalog} { OpenAction }
52     {
53       <<
54       /S/GoTo \c_space_tl
55       /D~\l__tag_tmpa_tl\c_space_tl
56       /SD~[\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn{__tag/struct}{\g__tag_tree_openaction_struct

```

there should be always a /Fit etc in the array but better play safe here ...

```

57             \int_compare:nNnTF{ \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq } > {1}
58             { /\seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq{2} }
59             { ] }
60             >>
61         }
62     }
63 }
64 }
65 \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/lastpage}{tagpdf}
66 {
67     \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_tree_bool
68     {
69         \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Catalog / MarkInfo } { Marked } { true }
70         \pdfmanagement_add:nne
71         { Catalog }
72         { StructTreeRoot }
73         { \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct } { 1 } }
74         \__tag_tree_update_openaction:
75     }
76 }

```

### 1.3 Writing the IDtree

The ID are currently quite simple: every structure has an ID build from the prefix ID together with the structure number padded with enough zeros to that we get directly an lexical order. We ship them out in bundles At first a seq to hold the references for the kids

\g\_\_tag\_tree\_id\_pad\_int

```

77 \int_new:N\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int
(End of definition for \g__tag_tree_id_pad_int.)
Now we get the needed padding
78 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_count:n {e}
79 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
80 {
81     \int_gset:Nn\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int
82     {\tl_count:e { \__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn{tagstruct}{1000}}+1}
83 }
84

```

This is the main code to write the tree it basically splits the existing structure numbers in chunks of length 50 TODO consider is 50 is a good length.

```

85 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_idtree:
86 {
87     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
88     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl
89     \int_zero:N \l__tag_tmpa_int
90     \int_step_inline:nnn {2} {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
91     {
92         \int_incr:N\l__tag_tmpa_int
93         \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl

```

```

94     {
95     \__tag_struct_get_id:n{##1}~\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn {__tag/struct}{##1}~
96     }
97 \int_compare:nNnF {\l__tag_tmpa_int}<{50} %
98     {
99     \pdf_object_unnamed_write:ne {dict}
100     { /Limits~[\__tag_struct_get_id:n{##1}~\l__tag_tmpa_int+1}~\__tag_struct_get_id:
101     /Names~[\l__tag_tmpa_tl]
102     }
103     \tl_put_right:Ne\l__tag_tmpb_tl {\pdf_object_ref_last:\c_space_tl}
104     \int_zero:N \l__tag_tmpa_int
105     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
106     }
107 }
108 \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
109 {
110 \pdf_object_unnamed_write:ne {dict}
111 {
112 /Limits~
113 [\__tag_struct_get_id:n{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int~\l__tag_tmpa_int+1}~
114 \__tag_struct_get_id:n{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}]
115 /Names~[\l__tag_tmpa_tl]
116 }
117 \tl_put_right:Ne\l__tag_tmpb_tl {\pdf_object_ref_last:}
118 }
119 \pdf_object_unnamed_write:ne {dict}{/Kids~[\l__tag_tmpb_tl]}
120 \__tag_prop_gput:cne
121 { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
122 { IDTree }
123 { \pdf_object_ref_last: }
124 }

```

## 1.4 Writing structure elements

The following commands are needed to write out the structure.

`\__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:` This writes out the root object.

```

125 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
126 {
127 \__tag_prop_gput:cne
128 { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
129 { ParentTree }
130 { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/parenttree } }
131 \__tag_prop_gput:cne
132 { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
133 { RoleMap }
134 { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/rolemap } }
135 \__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n { 1 }
136 \prop_gremove:cn { g__tag_struct_1_prop } {S}
137 \__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN { 1 } \l__tag_tmpa_tl
138 \pdf_object_write_indexed:nnne
139 { __tag/struct } { 1 }
140 {dict}
141 {

```

```

142         \l__tag_tmpa_tl
143     }

```

Better put S back, see <https://github.com/latex3/tagging-project/issues/86>

```

144     \prop_gput:cnn { g__tag_struct_1_prop } {S}{ /StructTreeRoot }
145 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:`.)

`\__tag_tree_write_structelements:` This writes out the other struct elems, the absolute number is in the counter.

```

146 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_structelements:
147 {
148     \int_step_inline:nnnn {2}{1}{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
149     {
150         \__tag_struct_write_obj:n { ##1 }
151     }
152 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_tree_write_structelements:`.)

## 1.5 ParentTree

`__tag/tree/parenttree` The object which will hold the parenttree

```

153 \pdf_object_new:n { __tag/tree/parenttree }

```

(End of definition for `__tag/tree/parenttree:`.)

The ParentTree maps numbers to objects or (if the number represents a page) to arrays of objects. The numbers refer to two distinct types of entries: page streams and real objects like annotations. The numbers must be distinct and ordered. So we rely on `abspage` for the pages and put the real objects at the end. We use a counter to have a chance to get the correct number if code is processed twice.

`\c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int` This is a counter for the real objects. It starts at the absolute last page value. It relies on `l3ref`.

```

154 \newcounter { g__tag_parenttree_obj_int }
155 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
156 {
157     \int_gset:Nn
158         \c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int
159         { \__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn{abspage}{100} }
160 }

```

(End of definition for `\c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int:`.)

We store the number/object references in a `tl`-var. If more structure is needed one could switch to a `seq`.

`\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl`

```

161 \tl_new:N \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl:`.)



`\_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn` This command stores a StructParent number and a objref into the tl var. This is only for objects like annotations, pages are handled elsewhere.

```

162 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn #1 #2 %#1 StructParent number, #2 objref
163 {
164   \tl_gput_right:Ne \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl
165   {
166     #1 \c_space_tl #2 ^^J
167   }
168 }

```

(End of definition for `\_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn`.)

`\l_tag_parenttree_content_tl` A tl-var which will get the page related parenttree content.

```

169 \tl_new:N \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl`.)

`\_tag_tree_fill_parenttree:` This is the main command to assemble the page related entries of the parent tree. It wanders through the pages and the mcid numbers and collects all mcid of one page.

```

170 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_tree_parenttree_rerun_msg: {}
171 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_tree_fill_parenttree:
172 {
173   \int_step_inline:nnnn{1}{1}{\_tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn{abspage}{-1}} %not quite clear
174   { %page ##1
175     \prop_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_prop
176     \int_step_inline:nnnn{1}{1}{\_tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn{tagmcabs}{-
177     1}}
177     {
178       %mcid###1
179       \int_compare:nT
180       {\property_ref:enn{mcid-###1}{tagabspage}{-1}=##1} %mcid is on current page
181       {% yes
182         \prop_put:Nee
183         \l__tag_tmpa_prop
184         {\property_ref:enn{mcid-###1}{tagmcid}{-1}}
185         {\prop_item:Nn \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop {###1}}
186       }
187     }
188     \tl_put_right:Ne\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
189     {
190       \int_eval:n {##1-1}\c_space_tl
191       [\c_space_tl %]
192     }
193     \int_step_inline:nnnn %###1
194     {0}
195     {1}
196     { \prop_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_prop -1 }
197     {
198       \prop_get:NnNTF \l__tag_tmpa_prop {###1} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
199       {% page#1:mcid##1:\l__tag_tmpa_tl :content
200         \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
201         {
202           \prop_if_exist:cTF { g__tag_struct_ \l__tag_tmpa_tl _prop }
203           {

```

```

204         \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{ \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
205     }
206     {
207         null
208     }
209     \c_space_tl
210 }
211 }
212 {
213     \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_parenttree_rerun_msg:
214     {
215         \msg_warning:nn { tag } {tree-mcid-index-wrong}
216     }
217 }
218 }
219 \tl_put_right:Nn
220 \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
221 {%[
222 ]^^J
223 }
224 }
225 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_fill\_parenttree:.)

\\_\_tag\_tree\_lua\_fill\_parenttree: This is a special variant for luatex. lua mode must/can do it differently.

```

226 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:
227 {
228     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
229     {
230         \lua_now:e
231         {
232             ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree
233             (
234                 \int_use:N\g_shipout_readonly_int
235             )
236         }
237     }
238 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_lua\_fill\_parenttree:.)

\\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_parenttree: This combines the two parts and writes out the object. TODO should the check for lua be moved into the backend code?

```

239 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_parenttree:
240 {
241     \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
242     {
243         \__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:
244     }
245     {
246         \__tag_tree_fill_parenttree:
247     }
248     \__tag_tree_parenttree_rerun_msg:

```

```

249 \tl_put_right:NV \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl
250 \pdf_object_write:nne { __tag/tree/parenttree }{dict}
251 {
252   /Nums\c_space_tl [\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl]
253 }
254 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_parenttree:.)

## 1.6 Rolemap dictionary

The Rolemap dictionary describes relations between new tags and standard types. The main part here is handled in the role module, here we only define the command which writes it to the PDF.

`__tag/tree/rolemap` At first we reserve again an object. Rolemap is also used in PDF 2.0 as a fallback.

```

255 \pdf_object_new:n { __tag/tree/rolemap }

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag/tree/rolemap.)

`\__tag_tree_write_rolemap:` This writes out the rolemap, basically it simply pushes out the dictionary which has been filled in the role module.

```

256 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_rolemap:
257 {
258   \bool_if:NT \g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool
259   {
260     \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_mathml_prop
261     {
262       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {##1}{Span}
263     }
264   }
265   \prop_map_inline:Nn\g__tag_role_rolemap_prop
266   {
267     \tl_if_eq:nnF {##1}{##2}
268     {
269       \pdfdict_gput:nne {g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
270       {##1}
271       {\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{##2}}
272     }
273   }
274   \pdf_object_write:nne { __tag/tree/rolemap }{dict}
275   {
276     \pdfdict_use:n{g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
277   }
278 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_rolemap:.)

## 1.7 Classmap dictionary

Classmap and attributes are setup in the struct module, here is only the code to write it out. It should only done if values have been used.

```
__tag_tree_write_classmap:
```

```
279 \cs_new_protected:Npn __tag_tree_write_classmap:
280   {
281     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
282     \seq_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_attr_class_used_seq
283     {
284       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_attr_class_used_prop {##1}{ }
285     }
286     \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_attr_class_used_prop
287     {
288       \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl
289       {
290         ##1\c_space_tl
291         <<
292         \prop_item:Nn
293         \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
294         {##1}
295         >>
296         \iow_newline:
297       }
298     }
299     \tl_if_empty:NF
300     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
301     {
302       \pdf_object_new:n { __tag/tree/classmap }
303       \pdf_object_write:nne
304       { __tag/tree/classmap }
305       {dict}
306       { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
307       \__tag_prop_gput:cne
308       { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
309       { ClassMap }
310       { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/classmap } }
311     }
312   }
```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_tree\_write\_classmap:.)

## 1.8 Namespaces

Namespaces are handle in the role module, here is the code to write them out. Namespaces are only relevant for pdf2.0.

```
__tag/tree/namespaces
```

```
313 \pdf_object_new:n { __tag/tree/namespaces }
```

(End of definition for \_\_tag/tree/namespaces.)

```
\__tag_tree_write_namespaces:
```

```
314 \cs_new_protected:Npn __tag_tree_write_namespaces:
315   {
316     \pdf_version_compare:NnF < {2.0}
```

```

317 {
318   \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_prop
319   {
320     \pdfdict_if_empty:nF {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS/##1_dict}
321     {
322       \pdf_object_write:nne {__tag/RoleMapNS/##1}{dict}
323       {
324         \pdfdict_use:n {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS/##1_dict}
325         }
326       \pdfdict_gput:nne{g__tag_role/namespace_##1_dict}
327       {RoleMapNS}{\pdf_object_ref:n {__tag/RoleMapNS/##1}}
328       }
329     \pdf_object_write:nne{tag/NS/##1}{dict}
330     {
331       \pdfdict_use:n {g__tag_role/namespace_##1_dict}
332       }
333     }
334     \pdf_object_write:nne {__tag/tree/namespaces}{array}
335     {
336       \prop_map_tokens:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_prop{\use_ii:n}
337     }
338   }
339 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_namespaces:.)

## 1.9 Finishing the structure

This assembles the various parts. TODO (when tabular are done or if someone requests it): IDTree

\\_\_tag\_finish\_structure:

```

340 \hook_new:n {tagpdf/finish/before}
341 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_finish_structure:
342 {
343   \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_tree_bool
344   {
345     \hook_use:n {tagpdf/finish/before}
346     \__tag_tree_final_checks:
347     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~ParentTree}
348     \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
349     \__tag_tree_write_parenttree:
350     \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
351     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~IDTree}
352     \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
353     \__tag_tree_write_idtree:
354     \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
355     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~RoleMap}
356     \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
357     \__tag_tree_write_rolemap:
358     \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
359     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~ClassMap}
360     \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
361     \__tag_tree_write_classmap:

```

```

362     \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
363     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~NameSpaces}
364     \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
365     \__tag_tree_write_namespaces:
366     \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
367     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~StructElems}
368     \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
369     \__tag_tree_write_structelements: %this is rather slow!!
370     \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
371     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~Root}
372     \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
373     \__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
374     \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
375   }
376 }
377 </package>

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_finish\_structure:.)

## 1.10 StructParents entry for Page

We need to add to the Page resources the `StructParents` entry, this is simply the absolute page number.

```

378 <*package>
379 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
380 {
381   \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_tree_bool
382   {
383     \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before} { tagpdf/structparents }
384     {
385       \pdfmanagement_add:nne
386       { Page }
387       { StructParents }
388       { \int_eval:n { \g_shipout_readonly_int} }
389     }
390   }
391 }
392 </package>

```

## Part V

# The `tagpdf-mc-shared` module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), code shared by all modes

## Part of the `tagpdf` package

### 1 Public Commands

---

<code>\tag_mc_begin:n</code>	<code>\tag_mc_begin:n{&lt;key-values&gt;}</code>
<code>\tag_mc_end:</code>	<code>\tag_mc_end:</code>

---

These commands insert the end code of the marked content. They don't end a group and in generic mode it doesn't matter if they are in another group as the starting commands. In generic mode both commands check if they are correctly nested and issue a warning if not.

---

<code>\tag_mc_use:n</code>	<code>\tag_mc_use:n{&lt;label&gt;}</code>
----------------------------	---

---

These command allow to record a marked content that was stashed away before into the current structure. A marked content can be used only once – the command will issue a warning if an mc is use a second time.

---

<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n</code>	<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n {&lt;name&gt;}</code>
<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:</code>	<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:</code>

---

New: 2019-11-20

This command pair creates a group with an artifact marker at the begin and the end. Inside the group the tagging commands are disabled. It allows to mark a complete region as artifact without having to worry about user commands with tagging commands. `<name>` should be a value allowed also for the `artifact` key. It pushes and pops mc-chunks at the begin and end. TODO: document is in `tagpdf.tex`

---

<code>\tag_mc_end_push:</code>	<code>\tag_mc_end_push:</code>
<code>\tag_mc_begin_pop:n</code>	<code>\tag_mc_begin_pop:n{&lt;key-values&gt;}</code>

---

New: 2021-04-22

If there is an open mc chunk, `\tag_mc_end_push:` ends it and pushes its tag of the (global) stack. If there is no open chunk, it puts `-1` on the stack (for debugging) `\tag_mc_begin_pop:n` removes a value from the stack. If it is different from `-1` it opens a tag with it. The reopened mc chunk loses info like the alt text for now.

---

<code>\tag_mc_if_in_p: *</code>	<code>\tag_mc_if_in:TF {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\tag_mc_if_in:TF *</code>	Determines if a mc-chunk is open.

---

---

`\tag_mc_reset_box:N` \* `\tag_mc_reset_box:N`  $\langle\text{box}\rangle$

---

New: 2023-06-11 This resets in lua mode the mc attributes to the one currently in use. It does nothing in generic mode.

---

`\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn` `\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn`  $\langle\text{box}\rangle$   $\langle\ \rangle$ stream name

---

New: 2024-11-18

This command is only needed in generic mode, in lua mode it gobbles its arguments. In generic mode it adds MC literals to the stream that are missing because of page breaks. The first argument is the box with the stream, the second a string representing the stream. Predeclared are the names `main`, `footnote` and `multicol`. If more streams should be handle the underlying interface must be enabled with `\tag_mc_new_stream:n`. The command is only for packages doing deep manipulations of the output routine! Example of use are in the `multicol` package and in `tagpdf` itself.

---

`\tag_mc_new_stream:n` `\tag_mc_new_stream:n`  $\langle\ \rangle$ stream name

---

New: 2024-11-18 This declares the interface needed to handle a new stream with `\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn`. Predeclared are the names `main`, `footnote` and `multicol`.

## 2 Public keys

The following keys can be used with `\tag_mc_begin:n`, `\tagmcbegin`, `\tag_mc_begin_pop:n`,

---

**tag** (mc-key) This key is required, unless `artifact` is used. The value is a tag like `P` or `H1` without a slash at the begin, this is added by the code. It is possible to setup new tags. The value of the key is expanded, so it can be a command. The expansion is passed unchanged to the PDF, so it should with a starting slash give a valid PDF name (some ascii with numbers like `H4` is fine).

---

**artifact** (mc-key) This will setup the marked content as an artifact. The key should be used for content that should be ignored. The key can take one of the values `pagination`, `layout`, `page`, `background` and `notype` (this is the default).

---

**raw** (mc-key) This key allows to add more entries to the properties dictionary. The value must be correct, low-level PDF. E.g. `raw=/Alt (Hello)` will insert an alternative Text.

---

**alt** (mc-key) This key inserts an `/Alt` value in the property dictionary of the BDC operator. The value is handled as verbatim string, commands are not expanded. The value will be expanded first once. If it is empty, nothing will happen.

---

**actualtext** (mc-key) This key inserts an `/ActualText` value in the property dictionary of the BDC operator. The value is handled as verbatim string, commands are not expanded. The value will be expanded first once. If it is empty, nothing will happen.



---

**label (mc-key)** This key sets a label by which one can call the marked content later in another structure (if it has been stashed with the `stash` key). Internally the label name will start with `tagpdf-`.

---

**stash (mc-key)** This “stashes” an mc-chunk: it is not inserted into the current structure. It should be normally be used along with a label to be able to use the mc-chunk in another place.  
The code is split into three parts: code shared by all engines, code specific to `luamode` and code not used by `luamode`.

### 3 Marked content code – shared

```

1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-shared} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4   {part of tagpdf - code related to marking chunks -
5     code shared by generic and luamode }
6 </header>

```

#### 3.1 Variables and counters

MC chunks must be counted. I use a latex counter for the absolute count, so that it is added to `\c1@ckpt` and restored e.g. in `tabulars` and `align`. `\int_new:N \c@g_@@_MCID_abs_int` and `\tl_put_right:Nn\c1@ckpt{\@elt{g_@@_MCID_abs_int}}` would work too, but as the name is not `expl3` then too, why bother? The absolute counter can be used to label and to check if the page counter needs a reset.

`g__tag_MCID_abs_int`

```

7 <*base>
8 \newcounter { g__tag_MCID_abs_int }

```

*(End of definition for `g__tag_MCID_abs_int`.)*

`\__tag_get_data_mc_counter:` This command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current state of the mc counter with the keyword `mc_counter`. By comparing the numbers it can be used to check the number of structure commands in a piece of code.

```

9 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_mc_counter:
10   {
11     \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
12   }
13 </base>

```

*(End of definition for `\__tag_get_data_mc_counter:`.)*

`\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:` A (expandable) function to get the current value of the `cnt`. TODO: duplicate of the previous one, this should be cleaned up.

```

14 <*shared>
15 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }

```

*(End of definition for `\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:`.)*

`\g__tag_in_mc_bool` This booleans record if a mc is open, to test nesting.

16 `\bool_new:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool`

*(End of definition for \g\_\_tag\_in\_mc\_bool.)*

`\g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop` For every chunk we need to know the structure it is in, to record this in the parent tree. We store this in a property.

key: absolute number of the mc (tagmcabs)

value: the structure number the mc is in

17 `\__tag_prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop`

*(End of definition for \g\_\_tag\_mc\_parenttree\_prop.)*

`\g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop` Some commands (e.g. links) want to close a previous mc and reopen it after they did their work. For this we create a stack:

18 `\seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_stack_seq`

*(End of definition for \g\_\_tag\_mc\_parenttree\_prop.)*

`\l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl` Artifacts can have various types like Pagination or Layout. This stored in this variable.

19 `\tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl`

*(End of definition for \l\_\_tag\_mc\_artifact\_type\_tl.)*

`\l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool` This booleans store the stash and artifact status of the mc-chunk.

`\l__tag_mc_artifact_bool` 20 `\bool_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool`

21 `\bool_new:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool`

*(End of definition for \l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_stash\_bool and \l\_\_tag\_mc\_artifact\_bool.)*

`\l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl` Variables used by the keys. `\l__@@_mc_key_properties_tl` will collect a number of values. TODO: should this be a pdfdict now?

`\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl`

`\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl`

22 `\tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl`

23 `\tl_new:N \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl`

24 `\tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl`

25 `\tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl`

*(End of definition for \l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_tag\_tl and others.)*

## 3.2 Functions

`\__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e` The commands labels a mc-chunk. It is used if the user explicitly labels the mc-chunk with the `label` key. The argument is the value provided by the user. It stores the attributes

`tagabspage`: the absolute page, `\g_shipout_readonly_int`,

`tagmcabs`: the absolute mc-counter `\c@g_@@_MCID_abs_int`. The reference command is based on `l3ref`.

26 `\cs_new:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e #1`

27 `{`

28 `\__tag_property_record:en{tagpdf-#1}{tagabspage,tagmcabs}`

29 `}`

*(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mc\_label:e)*

`\_tag_mc_set_label_used:n` Unlike with structures we can't check if a labeled mc has been used by looking at the P key, so we use a dedicated csname for the test

```

30 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_mc_set_label_used:n #1 % #1 labelname
31 {
32   \tl_new:c { g__tag_mc_label_\tl_to_str:n{#1}_used_tl }
33 }
34 </shared>

```

(End of definition for `\_tag_mc_set_label_used:n`.)

`\tag_mc_use:n` These command allow to record a marked content that was stashed away before into the current structure. A marked content can be used only once – the command will issue a warning if an mc is use a second time. The argument is a label name set with the `label` key.

TODO: is testing for struct the right test?

```

35 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_use:n #1 { \_tag_whatsits: }
36 <*shared>
37 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_use:n #1 % #1: label name
38 {
39   \_tag_check_if_active_struct:T
40   {
41     \tl_set:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_tl { \property_ref:nnn{tagpdf-#1}{tagmcabs}{ } }
42     \tl_if_empty:NTF\l__tag_tmpa_tl
43     {
44       \msg_warning:nnn {tag} {mc-label-unknown} {#1}
45     }
46     {
47       \cs_if_free:cTF { g__tag_mc_label_\tl_to_str:n{#1}_used_tl }
48       {
49         \_tag_mc_handle_stash:e { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
50         \_tag_mc_set_label_used:n {#1}
51       }
52       {
53         \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{mc-used-twice}{#1}
54       }
55     }
56   }
57 }
58 </shared>

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_use:n`. This function is documented on page 71.)

`\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n` This opens an artifact of the type given in the argument, and then stops all tagging. It  
`\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:` creates a group. It pushes and pops mc-chunks at the begin and end.

```

59 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n #1 { }
60 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_end: { }
61 <*shared>
62 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n #1
63 {
64   \tag_mc_end_push:
65   \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact=#1}
66   \group_begin:
67   \tag_suspend:n{artifact-group}
68 }

```

```

69
70 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_end:
71 {
72   \tag_resume:n{artifact-group}
73   \group_end:
74   \tag_mc_end:
75   \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
76 }
77 </shared>

```

(End of definition for \tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_begin:n and \tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_end:. These functions are documented on page 71.)

**\tag\_mc\_reset\_box:N** This allows to reset the mc-attributes in box. On base and generic mode it should do nothing.

```

78 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_reset_box:N #1 { }

```

(End of definition for \tag\_mc\_reset\_box:N. This function is documented on page 72.)

**\tag\_mc\_end\_push:**  
**\tag\_mc\_begin\_pop:n**

```

79 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_end_push: { }
80 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin_pop:n #1 { }
81 <*shared>
82 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_end_push:
83 {
84   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
85   {
86     \__tag_mc_if_in:TF
87     {
88       \seq_gpush:Ne \g__tag_mc_stack_seq { \tag_get:n {mc_tag} }
89       \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn
90         { pushed }
91         { \tag_get:n {mc_tag} }
92       \tag_mc_end:
93     }
94     {
95       \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_mc_stack_seq {-1}
96       \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn { pushed }{-1}
97     }
98   }
99 }
100
101 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin_pop:n #1
102 {
103   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
104   {
105     \seq_gpop:NNTF \g__tag_mc_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
106     {
107       \tl_if_eq:NnTF \l__tag_tmpa_tl {-1}
108       {
109         \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{-1}
110       }
111       {
112         \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
113         \tag_mc_begin:n {tag=\l__tag_tmpa_tl,#1}

```

```

114         }
115     }
116     {
117         \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{empty~stack,~nothing}
118     }
119 }
120 }

```

(End of definition for \tag\_mc\_end\_push: and \tag\_mc\_begin\_pop:n. These functions are documented on page 71.)

### 3.3 Keys

This are the keys where the code can be shared between the modes.

**stash (mc-key)** the two internal artifact keys are use to define the public **artifact**. For now we add support for the subtypes Header and Footer. Watermark,PageNum, LineNum,Redaction,Bates will be added if some use case emerges. If some use case for /BBox and /Attached emerges, it will be perhaps necessary to adapt the code.

\_\_artifact-bool  
\_\_artifact-type

```

121 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
122 {
123     stash .bool_set:N = \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool,
124     __artifact-bool .bool_set:N = \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool,
125     __artifact-type .choice:,
126     __artifact-type / pagination .code:n =
127     {
128         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination }
129     },
130     __artifact-type / pagination/header .code:n =
131     {
132         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination/Subtype/Header }
133     },
134     __artifact-type / pagination/footer .code:n =
135     {
136         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination/Subtype/Footer }
137     },
138     __artifact-type / layout .code:n =
139     {
140         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Layout }
141     },
142     __artifact-type / page .code:n =
143     {
144         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Page }
145     },
146     __artifact-type / background .code:n =
147     {
148         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Background }
149     },
150     __artifact-type / notype .code:n =
151     {
152         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl {}
153     },
154     __artifact-type / .code:n =
155     {

```

```
156     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl {}  
157     },  
158 }
```

*(End of definition for `stash (mc-key)`, `__artifact-bool`, and `__artifact-type`. This function is documented on page 73.)*

```
159 </shared>
```

## Part VI

# The tagpdf-mc-generic module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), generic mode Part of the tagpdf package

## 1 Marked content code – generic mode

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*generic>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-generic} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to marking chunks - generic mode}
5 </generic>
6 <*debug>
7 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-debug-generic} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
8 {part of tagpdf - debugging code related to marking chunks - generic mode}
9 </debug>
```

### 1.1 Variables

```
10 <*generic>
```

`\l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl` We need a ref-label system to ensure that the MCID cnt restarts at 0 on a new page This will be used to store the tagabspace attribute retrieved from a label.

```
11 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl`.)

`\l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl` temporary variable

```
12 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl`.)

`\g__tag_mc_marks` a marks register to keep track of the mc's at page breaks and a sequence to keep track of the data for the continuation extra-tmb. We probably will need to track mc-marks in more than one stream, so the seq contains the name of the stream.

```
13 \newmarks \g__tag_mc_marks
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_mc_marks`.)

`\g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq` Each stream has an associated global seq variable holding the bottom marks from the/a  
`\g__tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq` previous chunk in the stream. We provide three by default: main, footnote and multicol.  
`\g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq` TODO: perhaps an interface for more streams will be needed.

```
14 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq
```

```
15 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq
```

```
16 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq`, `\g__tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq`, and `\g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq`.)

`\tag_mc_new_stream:n`

```
17 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_new_stream:n #1
18 {
19   \seq_new:c { g__tag_mc_multicol_#1_seq }
20 }
```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_new_stream:n`. This function is documented on page 72.)

`\l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq`  
`\l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq`

The marks content contains a number of data which we will have to access and compare, so we will store it locally in two sequences. `topmarks` is unusable in LaTeX so we ignore it.

```
21 \seq_new:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
22 \seq_new:N \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq` and `\l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq`.)

## 1.2 Functions

`\__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn`  
`\__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n`  
`\__tag_mc_end_marks:`

Generic mode need to set marks for the page break and split stream handling. We always set two marks to be able to detect the case when no mark is on a page/galley. MC-begin commands will set (b,-,data) and (b+,data), MC-end commands will set (e,-,data) and (e+,data).

```
23 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 label
24 {
25   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
26   {
27     b-, %first of begin pair
28     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
29     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
30     #1, %tag
31     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool{stash}, % stash info
32     #2, %label
33   }
34   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
35   {
36     b+, % second of begin pair
37     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
38     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
39     #1, %tag
40     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool{stash}, % stash info
41     #2, %label
42   }
43 }
44 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn {oo}
45 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n #1 %#1 type
46 {
47   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
48   {
49     b-, %first of begin pair
50     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
51     -1, %structure num
52     #1 %type
53   }
```



```

54 \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
55 {
56   b+, %first of begin pair
57   \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
58   -1, %structure num
59   #1 %Type
60 }
61 }
62
63 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_end_marks:
64 {
65   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
66   {
67     e-, %first of end pair
68     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
69     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
70   }
71   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
72   {
73     e+, %second of end pair
74     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
75     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
76   }
77 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn`, `\__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n`, and `\__tag_mc_end_marks:.`)

`\__tag_mc_disable_marks:` This disables the marks. They can't be reenabled, so it should only be used in groups.

```

78 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_disable_marks:
79 {
80   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn \use_none:nn
81   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n \use_none:n
82   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_end_marks: \prg_do_nothing:
83 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_mc_disable_marks:.`)

`\__tag_mc_get_marks:` This stores the current content of the marks in the sequences. It naturally should only be used in places where it makes sense.

```

84 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_get_marks:
85 {
86   \exp_args:NNe
87   \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
88   { \tex_firstmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
89   \exp_args:NNe
90   \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
91   { \tex_botmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
92 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_mc_get_marks:.`)

`\__tag_mc_store:nnn` This inserts the mc-chunk `<mc-num>` into the structure `struct-num` after the `<mc-prev>`. The structure must already exist. The additional mcid dictionary is stored in a property.

The item is retrieved when the kid entry is built. We test if there is already an addition and append if needed.

```

93 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_store:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 mc-prev, #2 mc-num #3 structure-
    num
94 {
95   %\prop_show:N \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop
96   \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
97   {
98     \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1}{ \l__tag_tmpa_tl \__tag_struct_mcid_c
99   }
100  {
101    \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1}{ \__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n {#2}}
102  }
103  \prop_gput:Nee \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
104    {#2}
105    {#3}
106  }
107 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_store:nnn {eee}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_store:nnn.)

\\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tmb:n  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tme:n

These two functions should be used in the output routine at the place where a mc-literal could be missing due to a page break or some other split. They check (with the help of the marks) if a extra-tmb or extra-tme is needed. The tmb command stores also the mc into the structure, the tme has to store the data for a following extra-tmb. The argument takes a stream name like main or footnote to allow different handling there. The content of the marks must be stored before (with \@\_mc\_get\_marks: or manually) into \l\_@\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq and \l\_@\_mc\_botmarks\_seq so that the tests can use them.

```

108 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n #1 % #1 stream: e.g. main or footnote
109 {
110   \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ first~ \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {,~}}
111   \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ bot~ \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {,~}}
112   \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF
113   {
114     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TMB~ ~ missing~ --- inserted}
115     %test if artifact
116     \int_compare:nNnTF { \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {3} } = {-
117     1}
118     {
119       \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {4} }
120       \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
121     }
122     {
123       \exp_args:Ne
124       \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n
125       {
126         \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {4}
127       }
128       \str_if_eq:eeTF
129       {
130         \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {5}
131       }

```

```

131         {}
132     {
133         %store
134         \__tag_mc_store:eee
135         {
136             \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {2}
137         }
138         { \int_eval:n{\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int} }
139         {
140             \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {3}
141         }
142     }
143     {
144         %stashed -> warning!!
145     }
146 }
147 }
148 {
149     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TMB~ not~ missing}
150 }
151 }
152
153 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n #1 % #1 stream, eg. main or footnote
154 {
155     \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF
156     {
157         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TME~ ~ missing~ --- inserted}
158         \__tag_mc_emc:
159         \seq_gset_eq:cN
160         { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq }
161         \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
162     }
163     {
164         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TME~ not~ missing}
165     }
166 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tmb:n and \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tme:n.)

### 1.3 Looking at MC marks in boxes

\\_\_tag\_add\_missing\_mcs:Nn Assumptions:

- test for tagging active outside;
- mark retrieval also outside.

This takes a box register as its first argument (or the register number in a count register, as used by `multicol`). It adds an extra tmb at the top of the box if necessary and similarly an extra tme at the end. This is done by adding hboxes in a way that the positioning and the baseline of the given box is not altered. The result is written back to the box.

The second argument is the stream this box belongs to und is currently either `main` for the main galley, `footnote` for footnote note text, or `multicol` for boxes produced for columns in that environment. Other streams may follow over time.

```

167 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn #1 #2 {
168   \vbadness \@M
169   \vfuzz      \c_max_dim
170   \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn #1 { \box_ht:N #1 } {
171     \hbox_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box { \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n {#2} }
172     \hbox_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box { \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n {#2} }
173     \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > { 0 }
174     {
175       \seq_log:c { g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq }
176     }

```

The box placed on the top gets zero size and thus will not affect the box dimensions of the box we are modifying.

```

177   \box_set_ht:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_zero_dim
178   \box_set_dp:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_zero_dim

```

The box added at the bottom will get the depth of the original box. This way we can arrange that from the outside everything looks as before.

```

179   \box_set_ht:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box \c_zero_dim
180   \box_set_dp:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box { \box_dp:N #1 }

```

We need to set `\boxmaxdepth` in case the original box has an unusually large depth, otherwise that depth is not preserved when we string things together.

```

181   \boxmaxdepth \@maxdepth
182   \box_use_drop:N      \l__tag_tmpa_box
183   \vbox_unpack_drop:N #1

```

Back up by the depth of the box as we add that later again.

```

184   \tex_kern:D -\box_dp:N \l__tag_tmpb_box

```

And we don't want any glue added when we add the box.

```

185   \nointerlineskip
186   \box_use_drop:N \l__tag_tmpb_box
187 }
188 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn`.)

`\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn`  
`\__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn` This is the main command to add mc to the stream. It is therefore guarded by the mc-boolean.

If we aren't in the main stream then processing is a bit more complicated because to get at the marks in the box we need to artificially split it and then look at the split marks.

First argument is the box to update and the second is the "stream". In lua mode the command is a no-op.

```

189 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn #1#2
190 {
191   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T {

```

First set up a temp box for trial splitting.

```

192   \vbadness\maxdimen
193   \box_set_eq:NN \l__tag_tmpa_box #1

```

Split the box to the largest size available. This should give us all content (but to be sure that there is no issue we could test out test box is empty now (not done).

```

194   \vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_box \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_max_dim

```

As a side effect of this split we should now have the first and bottom split marks set up. We use this to set up `\l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq`

```

195     \exp_args:NNe
196     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
197     { \tex_splitfirstmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }

```

Some debugging info:

```

198 %     \iow_term:n { First~ mark~ from~ this~ box: }
199 %     \seq_log:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq

```

If this mark was empty then clearly the bottom mark will too be empty. Thus in this case we make use of the saved bot mark from the previous chunk. Note that if this is the first chunk in the stream the global seq would contain a random value, but then we can't end in this branch because the basis assumption is that streams are properly marked up so the first chunk would always have a mark at the beginning!

```

200     \seq_if_empty:NTF \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
201     {
202         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n
203         {
204             No~ marks~ so~ use~ saved~ bot~ mark:~
205             \seq_use:cn {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq} {,~} \iow_newline:
206         }
207         \seq_set_eq:Nc \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq}

```

We also update the bot mark to the same value so that we can later apply `\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn` with the data structures in place (see assumptions made there).

```

208         \seq_set_eq:NN \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
209     }

```

If there was a first mark then there is also a bot mark (and it can't be the same as our marks always come in pairs). So if that branch is chosen we update `\l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq` from the bot mark.

```

210     {
211         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n
212         {
213             Pick~ up~ new~ bot~ mark!
214         }
215         \exp_args:NNe
216         \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
217         { \tex_splitbotmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
218     }

```

Finally we call `\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn` to add any missing tmb/tme as needed,

```

219     \__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn #1 {#2}
220 %%
221     \seq_gset_eq:cN {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq} \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
222 %%
223 }
224 }
225 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn` and `\__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn`. This function is documented on page 72.)

`\_tag_mc_if_in_p:` This is a test if a mc is open or not. It depends simply on a global boolean: mc-chunks are added linearly so nesting should not be relevant.

`\_tag_mc_if_in:TF`  
`\tag_mc_if_in_p:`  
`\tag_mc_if_in:TF`

One exception are header and footer (perhaps they are more, but for now it doesn't seem so, so there are no dedicated code to handle this situation): When they are built and added to the page we could be both inside or outside a mc-chunk. But header and footer should ignore this and not push/pop or warn about nested mc. It is therefore important there to set and reset the boolean manually. See the tagpddocu-patches.sty for an example.

```
226 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \_tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
227 {
228   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_in_mc_bool
229     { \prg_return_true: }
230     { \prg_return_false: }
231 }
232
233 \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \tag_mc_if_in: \_tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
```

*(End of definition for \\_tag\_mc\_if\_in:TF and \tag\_mc\_if\_in:TF. This function is documented on page 71.)*

`\_tag_mc_bmc:n`  
`\_tag_mc_emc:`  
`\_tag_mc_bdc:nn`

These are the low-level commands. There are now equal to the pdfmanagement commands generic mode, but we use an indirection in case luamode need something else. change 04.08.2018: the commands do not check the validity of the arguments or try to escape them, this should be done before using them. change 2023-08-18: we are delaying the writing to the shipout.

```
234 % #1 tag, #2 properties
235 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_mc_bmc:n \pdf_bmc:n
236 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_mc_emc: \pdf_emc:
237 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_mc_bdc:nn \pdf_bdc:nn
238 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_mc_bdc_shipout:ee \pdf_bdc_shipout:ee
```

*(End of definition for \\_tag\_mc\_bmc:n, \\_tag\_mc\_emc:, and \\_tag\_mc\_bdc:nn.)*

`\_tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn`  
`\_tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n`  
`\_tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn`  
`\_tag_mc_handle_mcid:VV`

This create a BDC mark with an /MCID key. Most of the work here is to get the current number value for the MCID: they must be numbered by page starting with 0 and then successively. The first argument is the tag, e.g. P or Span, the second is used to pass more properties. Starting with texlive 2023 this is much simpler and faster as we can use delay the numbering to the shipout. We also define a wrapper around the low-level command as luamode will need something different.

```
239 \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_delayed_shipout_bool
240 {
241   \hook_gput_code:nnn {shipout/before}{tagpdf}{ \flag_clear:n { \_tag/mcid } }
242   \cs_set_protected:Npn \_tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn #1 #2
243     {
244       \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
245       \_tag_property_record:eV
246       {
247         mcid-\int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
248       }
249       \c__tag_property_mc_clist
250       \_tag_mc_bdc_shipout:ee
251       {#1}
252     }
```

```

253         /MCID~\flag_height:n { __tag/mcid }
254         \flag_raise:n { __tag/mcid }~ #2
255     }
256 }
257 }

```

if the engine is too old, we have to revert to earlier method.

```

258 {
259     \msg_new:nnn { tagpdf } { old-engine }
260     {
261         The~engine~or~the~PDF~management~is~too~old~or~\
262         delayed~shipout~has~been~disabled~\
263         Fast~numbering~of~MC~chunks~not~available~\
264         More~compilations~will~be~needed~in~generic~mode.
265     }
266     \msg_warning:nn { tagpdf } { old-engine }
267     \__tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
268     \int_new:N \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int
269     \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_bdc:nn {ne}

```

revert the attribute:

```

270     \property_gset:nnnn {tagmcid} { now }
271     {0} { \int_use:N \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int }
272     \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn #1 #2
273     {
274         \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
275         \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
276         {
277             \property_ref:enn %3 args
278             {
279                 mcid~\int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
280             }
281             { tagabspage }
282             {-1}
283         }
284         \prop_get:NoNTF
285         \g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
286         {
287             \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
288         }
289         \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl
290         {
291             %key already present, use value for MCID and add 1 for the next
292             \int_gset:Nn \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int { \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl }
293             \__tag_prop_gput:Nee
294             \g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
295             { \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl }
296             { \int_eval:n { \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl +1 } }
297         }
298         {
299             %key not present, set MCID to 0 and insert 1
300             \int_gzero:N \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int
301             \__tag_prop_gput:Nee
302             \g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
303             { \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl }

```

```

304         {1}
305     }
306     \__tag_property_record:eV
307     {
308         mcid-\int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
309     }
310     \c__tag_property_mc_clist
311     \__tag_mc_bdc:ne
312     {#1}
313     { /MCID~\int_eval:n { \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int }~ \exp_not:n { #2 } }
314 }
315 }
316 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n #1
317 {
318     \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn {#1} {}
319 }
320
321 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 properties
322 {
323     \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn {#1} {#2}
324 }
325
326 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn {VV}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:nn, \\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:n, and \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mcid:nn.)

\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:n This is the handler which puts a mc into the the current structure. The argument is the number of the mc. Beside storing the mc into the structure, it also has to record the structure for the parent tree. The name is a bit confusing, it does *not* handle mc with the stash key .... TODO: why does luamode use it for begin + use, but generic mode only for begin?

```

327 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n #1 %1 mcidnum
328 {
329     \__tag_check_mc_used:n {#1}
330     \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn
331     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
332     {#1}
333     \prop_gput:Nee \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
334     {#1}
335     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
336 }
337 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n { e }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:n.)

\\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact: Two commands to create artifacts, one without type, and one with. We define also a wrapper handler as luamode will need a different definition. TODO: perhaps later: more properties for artifacts

```

338 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:
339 {
340     \__tag_mc_bmc:n {Artifact}
341 }
342 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n #1

```



```

343 {
344   \__tag_mc_bdc:nn {Artifact}{/Type/#1}
345 }
346 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N #1
347   % #1 is a var containing the artifact type
348   {
349     \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
350     \tl_if_empty:NTF #1
351       { \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact: }
352       { \exp_args:NV\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n #1 }
353   }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:, \\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:n, and \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_artifact:N.)

\\_\_tag\_get\_data\_mc\_tag: This allows to retrieve the active mc-tag. It is use by the get command.

```

354 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_get_data_mc_tag: { \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
355 </generic>

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_get\_data\_mc\_tag:.)

**\tag\_mc\_begin:n** These are the core public commands to open and close an mc. They don't need to be  
**\tag\_mc\_end:** in the same group or grouping level, but the code expect that they are issued linearly.  
 The tag and the state is passed to the end command through a global var and a global boolean.

```

356 <(base)\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin:n #1 { \__tag_whatsits: \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID
357 <(base)\cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:{ \__tag_whatsits: }
358 <*generic | debug>
359 <*generic>
360 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin:n #1 %#1 keyval
361 {
362   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
363   {
364 </generic>
365 <*debug>
366 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin:n #1 %#1 keyval
367 {
368   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:TF
369   {
370     \__tag_debug_mc_begin_insert:n { #1 }
371 </debug>
372     \group_begin: %hm
373     \__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
374     \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool

```

set default MC tags to structure:

```

375     \tl_set_eq:NN \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
376     \tl_gset_eq:NN\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
377     \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc } {#1}
378     \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
379     { %handle artifact
380       \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
381       \exp_args:NV
382       \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
383     }

```

```

384     { %handle mcid type
385         \__tag_check_mc_tag:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
386         \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:VV
387             \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
388             \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl
389         \__tag_mc_begin_marks:oo{\l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl}{\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
390         \tl_if_empty:NF {\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
391         {
392             \exp_args:NV
393             \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl
394         }
395     \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
396     {
397         \exp_args:NV\__tag_struct_get_parentrole:nNN
398             \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
399             \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
400             \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
401         \__tag_check_parent_child:VVnnN
402             \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
403             \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
404             {MC}{ }
405             \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
406         \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl}<{0}
407         {
408             \prop_get:cnN
409             { g__tag_struct_ \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop }
410             {S}
411             \l__tag_tmpa_tl
412             \msg_warning:nneee
413             { tag }
414             {role-parent-child}
415             { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl/\l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }
416             { MC~(real content) }
417             { not~allowed~
418               (struct~\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl,~\l__tag_tmpa_tl)
419             }
420         }
421         \__tag_mc_handle_stash:e { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
422     }
423 }
424 \group_end:
425 }
426 < *debug >
427 {
428     \__tag_debug_mc_begin_ignore:n { #1 }
429 }
430 < /debug >
431 }
432 < *generic >
433 \cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
434 {
435     \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
436     {
437 < /generic >

```

```

438 <*debug>
439 \cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
440 {
441   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:TF
442   {
443     \__tag_debug_mc_end_insert:
444 </debug>
445     \__tag_check_mc_if_open:
446     \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
447     \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
448     \__tag_mc_emc:
449     \__tag_mc_end_marks:
450   }
451 <*debug>
452 {
453   \__tag_debug_mc_end_ignore:
454 }
455 </debug>
456 }
457 </generic | debug>

```

(End of definition for \tag\_mc\_begin:n and \tag\_mc\_end:. These functions are documented on page 71.)

## 1.4 Keys

Definitions are different in luamode. `tag` and `raw` are expanded as `\lua_now:e` in lua does it too and we assume that their values are safe.

```

tag (mc-key)
raw (mc-key)
alt (mc-key)
actualtext (mc-key)
label (mc-key)
artifact (mc-key)
458 <*generic>
459 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
460 {
461   tag .code:n = % the name (H,P,Span) etc
462   {
463     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
464     \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
465   },
466   raw .code:n =
467   {
468     \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { #1 }
469   },
470   alt .code:n = % Alt property
471   {
472     \str_set_convert:Noon
473     \l__tag_tmpa_str
474     { #1 }
475     { default }
476     { utf16/hex }
477     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
478     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
479   },
480   alttext .meta:n = {alt=#1},
481   actualtext .code:n = % ActualText property

```

```

482     {
483       \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
484       {
485         \str_set_convert:Noon
486         \l__tag_tmpa_str
487         { #1 }
488         { default }
489         { utf16/hex }
490         \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /ActualText~< }
491         \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
492       }
493     },
494     label .tl_set:N      = \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl,
495     artifact .code:n    =
496     {
497       \exp_args:Nne
498       \keys_set:nn
499       { __tag / mc }
500       { __artifact-bool, __artifact-type=#1 }
501     },
502     artifact .default:n = {notype}
503   }
504 </generic>

```

(End of definition for tag `mc-key`) and others. These functions are documented on page 72.)

## Part VII

# The `tagpdf-mc-luacode` module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), luamode-specific Part of the `tagpdf` package

The code is split into three parts: code shared by all engines, code specific to luamode and code not used by luamode.

## 1 Marked content code – luamode code

luamode uses attributes to mark mc-chunks. The two attributes used are defined in the backend file. The backend also load the lua file, as it can contain functions needed elsewhere. The attributes for mc are global (between 0.6 and 0.81 they were local but this was reverted). The attributes are setup only in lua, and one should use the lua functions to set and get them.

`g_@@_mc_type_attr`: the value represent the type

`g_@@_mc_cnt_attr`: will hold the `\c@g_@@_MCID_abs_int` value

Handling attribute needs a different system to number the page wise mcid's: a `\tagmcbegin ... \tagmcbend` pair no longer surrounds exactly one mc chunk: it can be split at page breaks. We know the included mcid(s) only after the ship out. So for the `struct -> mcid` mapping we need to record `struct -> mc-cnt` (in `\g_@@_mc_parenttree_prop` and/or a lua table and at shipout `mc-cnt-> {mcid, mcid, ...}` and when building the trees connect both.

Key definitions are overwritten for luatex to store that data in lua-tables. The data for the mc are in `ltx.@@.mc[absnum]`. The fields of the table are:

`tag` : the type (a string)

`raw` : more properties (string)

`label`: a string.

`artifact`: the presence indicates an artifact, the value (string) is the type.

`kids`: a array of tables

`{1={kid=num2,page=pagenum1}, 2={kid=num2,page=pagenum2},...}`,

this describes the chunks the mc has been split to by the traversing code

`parent`: the number of the structure it is in. Needed to build the parent tree.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*luamode>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-lua} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4   {tagpdf - mc code only for the luamode }
5 </luamode>
6 <*debug>
7 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-debug-lua} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
8   {part of tagpdf - debugging code related to marking chunks - lua mode}
9 </debug>
```

The main function which wanders through the shipout box to inject the literals. if the new callback is there, it is used.

```

10 <*luamode>
11 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf/mc}
12 {
13   \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_space_bool
14   {
15     \lua_now:e
16     {
17       if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
18         luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_shipout_filter", function(TAGBOX)~
19           ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout(TAGBOX)~return~true~
20         end, "tagpdf")~
21       if~luatexbase.declare_callback_rule~then~
22         luatexbase.declare_callback_rule("pre_shipout_filter", "luaotfload.dvi", "aft
23       end~
24     end
25   }
26   \lua_now:e
27   {
28     if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
29       token.get_next()~
30     end
31   }~\@secondoftwo~\@gobble
32   {
33     \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before}{tagpdf/lua}
34     {
35       \lua_now:e
36       { ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout (tex.box["ShipoutBox"]) }
37     }
38   }
39 }
40 \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_mc_bool
41 {
42   \lua_now:e
43   {
44     if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
45       luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_shipout_filter", function(TAGBOX)~
46         ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout(TAGBOX)~return~true~
47       end, "tagpdf")~
48     end
49   }
50   \lua_now:e
51   {
52     if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
53       token.get_next()~
54     end
55   }~\@secondoftwo~\@gobble
56   {
57     \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before}{tagpdf/lua}
58     {
59       \lua_now:e
60       { ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (tex.box["ShipoutBox"]) }
61     }

```

```

62         }
63     }
64 }

```

## 1.1 Commands

`\_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn` This command is used in the output routine by the ptagging code. It should do nothing in luamode.

```

65 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn #1#2 {}
66 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn

```

(End of definition for `\_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn`.)

`\tag_mc_new_stream:n`

```

67 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_new_stream:n #1 {}

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_new_stream:n`. This function is documented on page 72.)

`\_tag_mc_if_in_p:` This tests, if we are in an mc, for attributes this means to check against a number.

```

\_tag_mc_if_in:TF
\tag_mc_if_in_p:
\tag_mc_if_in:TF
68 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \_tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
69 {
70     \int_compare:nNnTF
71         { -2147483647 }
72         =
73         {\lua_now:e
74             {
75                 tex.print(\int_use:N \c_document_cctab,tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__t
76             )
77         }
78         { \prg_return_false: }
79         { \prg_return_true: }
80     }
81
82 \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \tag_mc_if_in: \_tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}

```

(End of definition for `\_tag_mc_if_in:TF` and `\tag_mc_if_in:TF`. This function is documented on page 71.)

`\_tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n` This takes a tag name, and sets the attributes globally to the related number.

```

\_tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:o
\_tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
83 \cs_new:Nn \_tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n % #1 is a tag name
84 {
85     %TODO ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from("#1") seems not to return a suitable number??
86     \tl_set:Ne\l__tag_tmpa_tl{\lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from ("#1")} }
87     \lua_now:e
88     {
89         tex.setattribute
90         (
91             "global",
92             luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr,
93             \l__tag_tmpa_tl
94         )
95     }
96     \lua_now:e
97     {

```

```

98         tex.setattribute
99         (
100            "global",
101            luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr,
102            \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:
103        )
104    }
105 }
106
107 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n { o }
108
109 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
110 {
111     \lua_now:e
112     {
113         tex.setattribute
114         (
115             "global",
116             luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr,
117             -2147483647
118         )
119     }
120     \lua_now:e
121     {
122         tex.setattribute
123         (
124             "global",
125             luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr,
126             -2147483647
127         )
128     }
129 }
130

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_lua\_set\_mc\_type\_attr:n and \\_\_tag\_mc\_lua\_unset\_mc\_type\_attr:.)

\\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcid\_kids:n These commands will in the finish code replace the dummy for a mc by the real mcid  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcid\_single\_kids:n kids we need a variant for the case that it is the only kid, to get the array right

```

131 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n
132 {
133     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (#1,0) }
134 }
135
136 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n
137 {
138     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (#1,1) }
139 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcid\_kids:n and \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcid\_single\_kids:n.)

\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:n This is the lua variant for the command to put an mcid absolute number in the current  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:e structure.

```

140 </luamode>
141 <*luamode | debug>

```



```

142 <luamode>\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n #1 %1 mcidnum
143 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n #1 %1 mcidnum
144 {
145   \__tag_check_mc_used:n { #1 }
146   \seq_gput_right:cn % Don't fill a lua table due to the command in the item,
147                       % so use the kernel command
148   { g__tag_struct_kids_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _seq }
149   {
150     \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n {#1}%
151   }
152 <debug>   \seq_gput_right:cn % Don't fill a lua table due to the command in the item,
153 <debug>   % so use the kernel command
154 <debug>   { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _seq }
155 <debug>   {
156     MC~#1%
157   }
158   \lua_now:e
159   {
160     ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcab
161     (
162       \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl,#1
163     )
164   }
165   \prop_gput:Nee
166   \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
167   { #1 }
168   { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
169 }
170 </luamode | debug>
171 <*luamode>
172 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n { e }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:n.)

**\tag\_mc\_begin:n** This is the lua version of the user command. We currently don't check if there is nesting as it doesn't matter so much in lua.

```

173 \cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_mc_begin:n
174 {
175   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
176   {
177     \group_begin:
178     %\__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
179     \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
180     \bool_set_false:N\l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
181     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl
182     \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int

```

set the default tag to the structure:

```

183     \tl_set_eq:NN \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
184     \tl_gset_eq:NN\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
185     \lua_now:e
186     {
187       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"tag","\g__tag_struct_tag_tl
188     }
189     \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc }{ label={}, #1 }

```

```

190 %check that a tag or artifact has been used
191 \__tag_check_mc_tag:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
192 %set the attributes:
193 \__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:o { \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
194 \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
195 { % store the absolute num name in a label:
196   \tl_if_empty:NF {\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
197   {
198     \exp_args:NV
199     \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl
200   }
201 % if not stashed record the absolute number
202 \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
203 {
204   \exp_args:NV\__tag_struct_get_parentrole:nNN
205   \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
206   \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
207   \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
208   \__tag_check_parent_child:VVnnN
209   \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
210   \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
211   {MC}{ }
212   \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
213   \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl}<{0}
214   {
215     \prop_get:cnN
216     { g__tag_struct_ \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop}
217     {S}
218     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
219     \msg_warning:nneee
220     { tag }
221     {role-parent-child}
222     { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl/\l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }
223     { MC-(real content) }
224     {
225       not-allowed~
226       (struct~\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl,~\l__tag_tmpa_tl)
227     }
228   }
229   \__tag_mc_handle_stash:e { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
230 }
231 }
232 \group_end:
233 }
234 }

```

(End of definition for \tag\_mc\_begin:n. This function is documented on page 71.)

**\tag\_mc\_end:** TODO: check how the use command must be guarded.

```

235 \cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
236 {
237   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
238   {
239     %\__tag_check_mc_if_open:

```

```

240     \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
241     \bool_set_false:N\l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
242     \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
243     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
244     \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
245   }
246 }

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_end:`. This function is documented on page 71.)

`\tag_mc_reset_box:N` This allows to reset the mc-attributes in box. On base and generic mode it should do nothing.

```

247 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_reset_box:N #1
248 {
249   \lua_now:e
250   {
251     local~type=tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)
252     local~mc=tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr)
253     ltx.__tag.func.update_mc_attributes(tex.getbox(\int_use:N #1),mc,type)
254   }
255 }

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_reset_box:N`. This function is documented on page 72.)

`\__tag_get_data_mc_tag:` The command to retrieve the current mc tag. TODO: Perhaps this should use the attribute instead.

```

256 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_mc_tag: { \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_get_data_mc_tag:`.)

## 1.2 Key definitions

```

tag (mc-key)   TODO: check conversion, check if local/global setting is right.
raw (mc-key)   257 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
alt (mc-key)   258 {
actualtext (mc-key) 259   tag .code:n = %
label (mc-key)    260   {
artifact (mc-key)  261     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
                  262     \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
                  263     \lua_now:e
                  264     {
                  265       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"tag", "#1")
                  266     }
                  267   },
                  268   raw .code:n =
                  269   {
                  270     \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { #1 }
                  271     \lua_now:e
                  272     {
                  273       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"raw", "#1")
                  274     }
                  275   },
                  276   alt .code:n = % Alt property
                  277   {

```

```

278     \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
279     {
280         \str_set_convert:Noon
281         \l__tag_tmpa_str
282         { #1 }
283         { default }
284         { utf16/hex }
285         \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
286         \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
287         \lua_now:e
288         {
289             ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
290             (
291                 \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"alt","/Alt~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>"
292             )
293         }
294     }
295 },
296 alttext .meta:n = {alt=#1},
297 actualtext .code:n = % Alt property
298 {
299     \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
300     {
301         \str_set_convert:Noon
302         \l__tag_tmpa_str
303         { #1 }
304         { default }
305         { utf16/hex }
306         \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
307         \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
308         \lua_now:e
309         {
310             ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
311             (
312                 \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,
313                 "actualtext",
314                 "/ActualText~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>"
315             )
316         }
317     }
318 },
319 label .code:n =
320 {
321     \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl { #1 }
322     \lua_now:e
323     {
324         ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
325         (
326             \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"label","#1"
327         )
328     }
329 },
330 __artifact-store .code:n =
331 {

```

```

332     \lua_now:e
333     {
334         ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
335         (
336             \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"artifact","#1"
337         )
338     }
339 },
340 artifact .code:n      =
341 {
342     \exp_args:Nne
343     \keys_set:nn
344     { __tag / mc }
345     { __artifact-bool, __artifact-type=#1, tag=Artifact }
346     \exp_args:Nne
347     \keys_set:nn
348     { __tag / mc }
349     { __artifact-store=\l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl }
350 },
351 artifact .default:n   = { notype }
352 }
353
354 </luamode>

```

(End of definition for tag (mc-key) and others. These functions are documented on page 72.)

## Part VIII

# The `tagpdf-struct` module

## Commands to create the structure Part of the `tagpdf` package

### 1 Public Commands

---

<code>\tag_struct_begin:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_begin:n{&lt;key-values&gt;}</code>
<code>\tag_struct_end:</code>	<code>\tag_struct_end:</code>
<code>\tag_struct_end:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_end:n{&lt;tag&gt;}</code>

---

These commands start and end a new structure. They don't start a group. They set all their values globally. `\tag_struct_end:n` does nothing special normally (apart from swallowing its argument, but if `tagpdf-debug` is loaded, it will check if the `{<tag>}` (after expansion) is identical to the current structure on the stack. The tag is not role mapped!

---

<code>\tag_struct_use:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_use:n{&lt;label&gt;}</code>
<code>\tag_struct_use_num:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_use_num:n{&lt;structure number&gt;}</code>

---

These commands insert a structure previously stashed away as kid into the currently active structure. A structure should be used only once, if the structure already has a parent a warning is issued.

---

<code>\tag_struct_object_ref:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_object_ref:n{&lt;struct number&gt;}</code>
<code>\tag_struct_object_ref:e</code>	

---

This is a small wrapper around `\pdf_object_ref:n` to retrieve the object reference of the structure with the number `<struct number>`. This number can be retrieved and stored for the current structure for example with `\tag_get:n{<structnum>}`. Be aware that it can only be used if the structure has already been created and that it doesn't check if the object actually exists!

The following two functions are used to add annotations. They must be used together and with care to get the same numbers. Perhaps some improvements are needed here.

---

<code>\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn</code>	<code>\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn{&lt;object reference&gt;}{&lt;struct parent number&gt;}</code>
--	--

---

This inserts an annotation in the structure. `<object reference>` is there reference to the annotation. `<struct parent number>` should be the same number as had been inserted with `\tag_struct_parent_int:` as `StructParent` value to the dictionary of the annotation. The command will increase the value of the counter used by `\tag_struct_parent_int:`.

---

<code>\tag_struct_parent_int:</code>	<code>\tag_struct_parent_int:</code>
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

---

This gives back the next free `/StructParent` number (assuming that it is together with `\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` which will increase the number.

---

---

`\tag_struct_gput:nnn` `\tag_struct_gput:nnn{<structure number>}{<keyword>}{<value>}`

This is a command that allows to update the data of a structure. This often can't be done simply by replacing the value, as we have to preserve and extend existing content. We use therefore dedicated functions adjusted to the key in question. The first argument is the number of the structure, the second a keyword referring to a function, the third the value. Currently the only keyword is `ref` which updates the Ref key (an array)

---

---

`\tag_struct_gput_ref:nnn` `\tag_struct_gput_ref:nnn{<structure number>}{<keyword>}{<value>}`

This is an user interface to add a Ref key to an existing structure. The target structure doesn't have to exist yet but can be addressed by label, destname or even num. `<keyword>` is currently either `label`, `dest` or `num`. The value is then either a label name, the name of a destination or a structure number.

## 2 Public keys

### 2.1 Keys for the structure commands

**tag** (*struct key*) This is required. The value of the key is normally one of the standard types listed in the main tagpdf documentation. It is possible to setup new tags/types. The value can also be of the form `type/NS`, where NS is the shorthand of a declared name space. Currently the names spaces `pdf`, `pdf2`, `mathml` and `user` are defined. This allows to use a different name space than the one connected by default to the tag. But normally this should not be needed.

**stash** (*struct key*) Normally a new structure inserts itself as a kid into the currently active structure. This key prohibits this. The structure is nevertheless from now on "the current active structure" and parent for following marked content and structures.

**label** (*struct key*) This key sets a label by which one can refer to the structure. It is e.g. used by `\tag_struct_use:n` (where a real label is actually not needed as you can only use structures already defined), and by the `ref` key (which can refer to future structures). Internally the label name will start with `tagpdfstruct-` and it stores the two attributes `tagstruct` (the structure number) and `tagstructobj` (the object reference).

**parent** (*struct key*) By default a structure is added as kid to the currently active structure. With the parent key one can choose another parent. The value is a structure number which must refer to an already existing, previously created structure. Such a structure number can for example be have been stored with `\tag_get:n`, but one can also use a label on the parent structure and then use `\property_ref:nn{tagpdfstruct-label}{tagstruct}` to retrieve it.

**firstkey** (*struct key*) If this key is used the structure is added at the left of the kids of the parent structure (if the structure is not stashed). This means that it will be the first kid of the structure (unless some later structure uses the key too).

**title** (*struct key*) This keys allows to set the dictionary entry `/Title` in the structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. Commands are not expanded. `title-o` will expand the value once.

- alt** (*struct key*) This key inserts an `/Alt` value in the dictionary of structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. The value will be expanded first once. If it is empty, nothing will happen.
- actualtext** (*struct key*) This key inserts an `/ActualText` value in the dictionary of structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. The value will be expanded first once. If it is empty, nothing will happen.
- lang** (*struct key*) This key allows to set the language for a structure element. The value should be a bcp-identifier, e.g. `de-De`.
- ref** (*struct key*) This key allows to add references to other structure elements, it adds the `/Ref` array to the structure. The value should be a comma separated list of structure labels set with the `label` key. e.g. `ref={label1,label2}`.
- E** (*struct key*) This key sets the `/E` key, the expanded form of an abbreviation or an acronym (I couldn't think of a better name, so I stucked to E).
- AF** (*struct key*) These keys handle associated files in the structure element.
- AFref** (*struct key*)
- AFinline** (*struct key*)      **AF** = *<object name>*
- AFinline-o** (*struct key*)    **AFref** = *<object reference>*
- texsource** (*struct key*)    **AF-inline** = *<text content>*
- mathml** (*struct key*)
- The value *<object name>* should be the name of an object pointing to the `/Filespec` dictionary as expected by `\pdf_object_ref:n` from a current `l3kernel`.
- The value **AF-inline** is some text, which is embedded in the PDF as a text file with mime type `text/plain`. **AF-inline-o** is like **AF-inline** but expands the value once.
- Future versions will perhaps extend this to more mime types, but it is still a research task to find out what is really needed.
- texsource** is a special variant of **AF-inline-o** which embeds the content as `.tex` source with the `/AFrelationship` key set to `/Source`. It also sets the `/Desc` key to a (currently) fix text.
- mathml** is a special variant of **AF-inline-o** which embeds the content as `.xml` file with the `/AFrelationship` key set to `/Supplement`. It also sets the `/Desc` key to a (currently) fix text.
- The argument of **AF** is an object name referring an embedded file as declared for example with `\pdf_object_new:n` or with the `l3pdffile` module. **AF** expands its argument (this allows e.g. to use some variable for automatic numbering) and can be used more than once, to associate more than one file.
- The argument of **AFref** is an object reference to an embedded file or a variable expanding to such a object reference in the format as you would get e.g. from `\pdf_object_ref_last:` or `\pdf_object_ref:n` (and which is different for the various engines!). The key allows to make use of anonymous objects. Like **AF** the **AFref** key expands its argument and can be used more than once, to associate more than one file. *It does not check if the reference is valid!*
- The inline keys can be used only once per structure. Additional calls are ignored.
- attribute** (*struct key*) This key takes as argument a comma list of attribute names (use braces to protect the commas from the external key-val parser) and allows to add one or more attribute dictionary entries in the structure object. As an example



```
\tagstructbegin{tag=TH,attribute= TH-row}
```

Attribute names and their content must be declared first in `\tagpdfsetup`.

**attribute-class** (*struct key*) This key takes as argument a comma list of attribute class names (use braces to protect the commas from the external key-val parser) and allows to add one or more attribute classes to the structure object.

Attribute class names and their content must be declared first in `\tagpdfsetup`.

## 2.2 Setup keys

---

```
role/new-attribute (setup-key) role/new-attribute = {<name>}{<Content>}
newattribute (deprecated)
```

---

This key can be used in the setup command `\tagpdfsetup` and allow to declare a new attribute, which can be used as attribute or attribute class. The value are two brace groups, the first contains the name, the second the content.

```
\tagpdfsetup
{
  role/new-attribute =
    {TH-col}{/O /Table /Scope /Column},
  role/new-attribute =
    {TH-row}{/O /Table /Scope /Row},
}
```

**root-AF** (*setup key*) `root-AF = <object name>`

This key can be used in the setup command `\tagpdfsetup` and allows to add associated files to the root structure. Like **AF** it can be used more than once to add more than one file.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-struct-code} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to storing structure}
5 </header>
```

## 3 Variables

`\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int` Every structure will have a unique, absolute number. I will use a latex counter for the structure count to have a chance to avoid double structures in align etc.

```
6 <base>\newcounter { g__tag_struct_abs_int }
7 <base>\int_gset:Nn \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int { 1 }
```

(End of definition for `\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int`.)

`\g__tag_struct_objR_seq` a sequence to store mapping between the structure number and the object number. We assume that structure numbers are assign consecutively and so the index of the seq can be used. A seq allows easy mapping over the structures.

```
8 <*package>
9 \__tag_seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_objR_seq
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_objR_seq`.)

`\c__tag_struct_null_tl` In lua mode we have to test if the kids a null  
`10 \tl_const:Nn\c__tag_struct_null_tl {null}`

(End of definition for `\c__tag_struct_null_tl`.)

`\g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop` in generic mode it can happen after a page break that we have to inject into a structure sequence an additional mc after. We will store this additional info in a property. The key is the absolute mc num, the value the pdf directory.

`11 \__tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop`.)

`\g__tag_struct_stack_seq` A stack sequence for the structure stack. When a sequence is opened it's number is put on the stack.

`12 \seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_stack_seq`  
`13 \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_struct_stack_seq {1}`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_stack_seq`.)

`\g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq` We will perhaps also need the tags. While it is possible to get them from the numbered stack, lets build a tag stack too.

`14 \seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq`  
`15 \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq {{Root}{StructTreeRoot}}`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq`.)

`\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl` The global variable will hold the current structure number. It is already defined in `tagpdf-base`.  
`\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl` The local temporary variable will hold the parent when we fetch it from the stack.

`16 \</package>`  
`17 \<base>\tl_new:N \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl`  
`18 \<base>\tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl {\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}`  
`19 \<*package>`  
`20 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl` and `\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl`.)

I will need at least one structure: the StructTreeRoot normally it should have only one kid, e.g. the document element.

The data of the StructTreeRoot and the StructElem are in properties: `\g__@@_struct_1_prop` for the root and `\g__@@_struct_N_prop`,  $N \geq 2$  for the other.

This creates quite a number of properties, so perhaps we will have to do this more efficiently in the future.

All properties have at least the keys

### **Type** StructTreeRoot or StructElem

and the keys from the two following lists (the root has a special set of properties). the values of the prop should be already escaped properly when the entries are created (title,lang,alt,E,actualtext)

`\c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_entries_seq`  
`\c__tag_struct_StructElem_entries_seq`

These seq contain the keys we support in the two object types. They are currently no longer used, but are provided as documentation and for potential future checks. They should be adapted if there are changes in the PDF format.

```

21 \seq_const_from_clist:Nn \c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_entries_seq
22   {%p. 857/858
23     Type,           % always /StructTreeRoot
24     K,             % kid, dictionary or array of dictionaries
25     IDTree,       % currently unused
26     ParentTree,   % required,obj ref to the parent tree
27     ParentTreeNextKey, % optional
28     RoleMap,
29     ClassMap,
30     Namespaces,
31     AF             %pdf 2.0
32   }
33
34 \seq_const_from_clist:Nn \c__tag_struct_StructElem_entries_seq
35   {%p 858 f
36     Type,           %always /StructElem
37     S,             %tag/type
38     P,             %parent
39     ID,            %optional
40     Ref,           %optional, pdf 2.0 Use?
41     Pg,           %obj num of starting page, optional
42     K,             %kids
43     A,             %attributes, probably unused
44     C,             %class ""
45     %R,           %attribute revision number, irrelevant for us as we
46                 % don't update/change existing PDF and (probably)
47                 % deprecated in PDF 2.0
48     T,             %title, value in () or <>
49     Lang,          %language
50     Alt,           % value in () or <>
51     E,             % abbreviation
52     ActualText,
53     AF,            %pdf 2.0, array of dict, associated files
54     NS,            %pdf 2.0, dict, namespace
55     PhoneticAlphabet, %pdf 2.0
56     Phoneme        %pdf 2.0
57   }

```

(End of definition for `\c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_entries_seq` and `\c__tag_struct_StructElem_entries_seq`.)

### 3.1 Variables used by the keys

`\g__tag_struct_tag_tl`  
`\g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl`  
`\l__tag_struct_roletag_tl`  
`\g__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl`

Use by the tag key to store the tag and the namespace. The role tag variables will hold locally rolemapping info needed for the parent-child checks

```

58 \tl_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
59 \tl_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
60 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_roletag_tl
61 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_tag_tl` and others.)

`\g__tag_struct_label_num_prop` This will hold for every structure label the associated structure number. The prop will allow to fill the /Ref key directly at the first compilation if the ref key is used.

```

62 \prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_struct_label_num_prop

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_label_num_prop`.)

`\l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool` This will keep track of the stash status

```

63 \bool_new:N \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool`.)

`\l__tag_struct_addkid_tl` This decides if a structure kid is added at the left or right of the parent. The default is right.

```

64 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_addkid_tl
65 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_struct_addkid_tl {right}

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_struct_addkid_tl`.)

### 3.2 Variables used by tagging code of basic elements

`\g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop` This variable records for (some or all, not clear yet) destination names the related structure number to allow to reference them in a Ref. The key is the destination. It is currently used by the toc-tagging and sec-tagging code.

```

66 \package
67 \prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop
68 \*package

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop`.)

`\g__tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop` This variable contains structures whose Ref key should be updated at the end to point to structured related with this destination. As this is probably need in other places too, it is not only a toc-variable. TODO: remove after 11/2024 release.

```

69 \prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop`.)

## 4 Commands

The properties must be in some places handled expandably. So I need an output handler for each prop, to get expandable output see <https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/424208>. There is probably room here for a more efficient implementation. TODO check if this can now be implemented with the pdfdict commands. The property contains currently non pdf keys, but e.g. object numbers are perhaps no longer needed as we have named object anyway.

```

\__tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn
\__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n
70 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn #1 #2 %#1 num, #2 key
71 {
72   \prop_if_in:cnT
73     { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
74     { #2 }
75     {
76       \c_space_tl/#2~ \prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct_#1_prop } { #2 }

```

```

77     }
78   }
79
80 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n #1
81   {
82     \cs_new:cn { \__tag_struct_output_prop_#1:n }
83     {
84       \__tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn {#1}{#1}
85     }
86   }
87 \endpackage

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_output\_prop\_aux:nn and \\_\_tag\_new\_output\_prop\_handler:n.)

\\_\_tag\_struct\_prop\_gput:nnn The structure props must be filled in various places. For this we use a common command which also takes care of the debug package:

```

88 \begin{package} {debug}
89 \package\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn #1 #2 #3
90 \debug\cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn #1 #2 #3
91   {
92     \__tag_prop_gput:cnn
93     { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }{#2}{#3}
94 \debug\prop_gput:cnn { g__tag_struct_debug_#1_prop } {#2} {#3}
95   }
96 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn {onn,nne,nee,nno}
97 \endpackage {debug}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_prop\_gput:nnn.)

## 4.1 Initialization of the StructTreeRoot

The first structure element, the StructTreeRoot is special, so created manually. The underlying object is @@/struct/1 which is currently created in the tree code (TODO move it here). The ParentTree and RoleMap entries are added at begin document in the tree code as they refer to object which are setup in other parts of the code. This avoid timing issues.

```

98 \begin{package}
99 \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl {1}

```

\\_\_tag\_pdf\_name\_e:n

```

100 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_pdf_name_e:n #1{\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#1}}
101 \endpackage

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_pdf\_name\_e:n.)

g\_\_tag\_struct\_1\_prop  
g\_\_tag\_struct\_kids\_1\_seq

```

102 \begin{package}
103 \__tag_prop_new:c { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
104 \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n {1}
105 \__tag_seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_kids_1_seq }
106
107 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
108   { 1 }
109   { Type }

```

```

110 { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {StructTreeRoot} }
111
112 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
113 { 1 }
114 { S }
115 { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {StructTreeRoot} }
116
117 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
118 { 1 }
119 { rolemap }
120 { {StructTreeRoot}{pdf} }
121
122 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
123 { 1 }
124 { parentrole }
125 { {StructTreeRoot}{pdf} }
126

```

Namespaces are pdf 2.0. If the code moves into the kernel, the setting must be probably delayed.

```

127 \pdf_version_compare:NnF < {2.0}
128 {
129   \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
130   { 1 }
131   { Namespaces }
132   { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/namespaces } }
133 }
134 </package>

```

In debug mode we have to copy the root manually as it is already setup:

```

135 <debug>\prop_new:c { g__tag_struct_debug_1_prop }
136 <debug>\seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_1_seq }
137 <debug>\prop_gset_eq:cc { g__tag_struct_debug_1_prop }{ g__tag_struct_1_prop }
138 <debug>\prop_gremove:cn { g__tag_struct_debug_1_prop }{Namespaces}

```

(End of definition for g\_\_tag\_struct\_1\_prop and g\_\_tag\_struct\_kids\_1\_seq.)

## 4.2 Adding the /ID key

Every structure gets automatically an ID which is currently simply calculated from the structure number.

```

\__tag_struct_get_id:n
139 <*package>
140 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_struct_get_id:n #1 %#1=struct num
141 {
142   (
143     ID.
144     \prg_replicate:nn
145     { \int_abs:n{\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int - \tl_count:e { \int_to_arabic:n { #1 } }} }
146     { 0 }
147     \int_to_arabic:n { #1 }
148   )
149 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_get\_id:n.)

### 4.3 Filling in the tag info

`\_tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn` This adds or updates the tag info to a structure given by a number. We need also the original data, so we store both.

```

150 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
151 {
152   \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn #1 #2 #3
153     %#1 structure number, #2 tag, #3 NS
154     {
155       \_tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
156         { #1 }
157         { S }
158         { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {#2} } %
159     }
160 }
161 {
162   \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn #1 #2 #3
163     {
164       \_tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
165         { #1 }
166         { S }
167         { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {#2} } %
168       \prop_get:NnNT \g__tag_role_NS_prop {#3} \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
169       {
170         \_tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
171           { #1 }
172           { NS }
173           { \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl } %
174       }
175     }
176 }
177 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn {eVV}

```

(End of definition for `\_tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn`.)

`\_tag_struct_get_parentrole:nNN` We also need a way to get the tag info needed for parent child check from parent structures.

```

178 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_get_parentrole:nNN #1 #2 #3
179   %#1 struct num, #2 tlvvar for tag , #3 tlvvar for NS
180   {
181     \prop_get:cnNTF
182       { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
183       { parentrole }
184       \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
185       {
186         \tl_set:Ne #2{\exp_last_unbraced:NV\use_i:nn \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl}
187         \tl_set:Ne #3{\exp_last_unbraced:NV\use_ii:nn \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl}
188       }
189       {
190         \tl_clear:N#2
191         \tl_clear:N#3
192       }
193     }
194   \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_struct_get_parentrole:nNN {eNN}

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_struct_get_parentrole:nn`.)

## 4.4 Handlings kids

Commands to store the kids. Kids in a structure can be a reference to a mc-chunk, an object reference to another structure element, or a object reference to an annotation (through an OBJR object).

`\__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn`  
`\__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:ne`

The command to store an mc-chunk, this is a dictionary of type MCR. It would be possible to write out the content directly as unnamed object and to store only the object reference, but probably this would be slower, and the PDF is more readable like this. The code doesn't try to avoid the use of the `/Pg` key by checking page numbers. That imho only slows down without much gain. In generic mode the page break code will perhaps have to insert an additional mcid after an existing one. For this we use a property list At first an auxiliary to write the MCID dict. This should normally be expanded!

```
195 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n #1 %#1 MCID absnum
196   {
197     <<
198     /Type \c_space_tl /MCR \c_space_tl
199     /Pg
200     \c_space_tl
201     \pdf_pageobject_ref:n { \property_ref:enn{mcid-#1}{tagabspage}{1} }
202     /MCID \c_space_tl \property_ref:enn{mcid-#1}{tagmcid}{1}
203     >>
204   }
205 (/package)
206 (*package | debug)
207 (package)\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn #1 #2
208 (debug)\cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn #1 #2
209 %#1 structure num, #2 MCID absnum%
210   {
211     \__tag_seq_gput_right:ce
212     { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
213     {
214       \__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n {#2}
215     }
216 (debug)   \seq_gput_right:cn
217 (debug)   { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_#1_seq }
218 (debug)   {
219 (debug)     MC~#2
220 (debug)   }
221   \__tag_seq_gput_right:cn
222   { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
223   {
224     \prop_item:Nn \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#2}
225   }
226 }
227 (package)\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn {ne}
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn`.)

`\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn`  
`\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:ee`

This commands adds a structure as kid. We only need to record the object reference in the sequence.



```

228 <package>\cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn #1 #2
229 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn #1 #2
230 %%#1 num of parent struct, #2 kid struct
231 {
232   \__tag_seq_gput_right:ce
233   { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
234   {
235     \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{ #2 }
236   }
237 <debug>   \seq_gput_right:cn
238 <debug>   { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_#1_seq }
239 <debug>   {
240 <debug>     Struct~#2
241 <debug>   }
242 }
243 <package>\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn {ee}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_struct\_gput\_right:nn.)

\\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_struct\_gput\_left:nn  
 \\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_struct\_gput\_left:ee

This commands adds a structure as kid one the left, so as first kid. We only need to record the object reference in the sequence.

```

244 <package>\cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:nn #1 #2
245 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:nn #1 #2
246 %%#1 num of parent struct, #2 kid struct
247 {
248   \__tag_seq_gput_left:ce
249   { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
250   {
251     \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{ #2 }
252   }
253 <debug>   \seq_gput_left:cn
254 <debug>   { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_#1_seq }
255 <debug>   {
256 <debug>     Struct~#2
257 <debug>   }
258 }
259 <package>\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:nn {ee}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_struct\_gput\_left:nn.)

\\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_OBJR\_gput\_right:nnn  
 \\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_OBJR\_gput\_right:eee

At last the command to add an OBJR object. This has to write an object first. The first argument is the number of the parent structure, the second the (expanded) object reference of the annotation. The last argument is the page object reference

```

260 <package>\cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nnn #1 #2 #3
261 <package>
262 <package>
263 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nnn #1 #2 #3
264 %%#1 num of parent struct,#2 obj reference,#3 page object reference
265 {
266   \pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn
267   { dict }
268   {
269     /Type/OBJR/Obj~#2/Pg~#3
270   }

```

```

271 \__tag_seq_gput_right:ce
272 { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
273 {
274   \pdf_object_ref_last:
275 }
276 <debug> \seq_gput_right:ce
277 <debug> { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_#1_seq }
278 <debug> {
279 <debug> OBJR~reference
280 <debug> }
281 }
282 </package | debug>
283 <*package>
284 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nnn { eee }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_OBJR\_gput\_right:nnn.)

\\_\_tag\_struct\_exchange\_kid\_command:N  
 \\_\_tag\_struct\_exchange\_kid\_command:c

In luamode it can happen that a single kid in a structure is split at a page break into two or more mcid. In this case the lua code has to convert put the dictionary of the kid into an array. See issue 13 at tagpdf repo. We exchange the dummy command for the kids to mark this case. Change 2024-03-19: don't use a regex - that is slow.

```

285 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N #1 %#1 = seq var
286 {
287   \seq_gpop_left:NN #1 \l__tag_tmpa_tl
288   \tl_replace_once:Nnn \l__tag_tmpa_tl
289   {\__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n}
290   {\__tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n}
291   \seq_gput_left:NV #1 \l__tag_tmpa_tl
292 }
293
294 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N { c }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_exchange\_kid\_command:N.)

\\_\_tag\_struct\_fill\_kid\_key:n

This command adds the kid info to the K entry. In lua mode the content contains commands which are expanded later. The argument is the structure number.

```

295 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n #1 %#1 is the struct num
296 {
297   \bool_if:NF\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
298   {
299     \seq_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
300     \seq_map_inline:cn { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
301     { \seq_put_right:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { ##1 } }
302     %\seq_show:c { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
303     %\seq_show:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
304     \seq_remove_all:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq {}
305     %\seq_show:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
306     \seq_gset_eq:cN { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq } \l__tag_tmpa_seq
307   }
308
309   \int_case:nnF
310   {
311     \seq_count:c
312     {

```

```

313         g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
314     }
315 }
316 {
317     { 0 }
318     { } %no kids, do nothing
319     { 1 } % 1 kid, insert
320     {
321         % in this case we need a special command in
322         % luamode to get the array right. See issue #13
323         \bool_if:NTF\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
324         {
325             \__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:c
326             {g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq}

```

check if we get null

```

327         \tl_set:Nc\l__tag_tmpa_tl
328         {\use:e{\seq_item:cn {g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq} {1}}}
329         \tl_if_eq:NNF\l__tag_tmpa_tl \c__tag_struct_null_tl
330         {
331             \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
332             {#1}
333             {K}
334             {
335                 \seq_item:cn
336                 {
337                     g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
338                 }
339                 {1}
340             }
341         }
342     }
343     {
344         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
345         {#1}
346         {K}
347         {
348             \seq_item:cn
349             {
350                 g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
351             }
352             {1}
353         }
354     }
355 } %
356 }
357 { %many kids, use an array
358     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
359     {#1}
360     {K}
361     {
362         [
363             \seq_use:cn
364             {

```

```

365         g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
366         }
367         {
368         \c_space_tl
369         }
370     ]
371 }
372 }
373 }
374

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n`.)

## 4.5 Output of the object

`\__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN` This maps the dictionary content of a structure into a tl-var. Basically it does what `\pdfdict_use:n` does. This is used a lot so should be rather fast.

```

375 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN #1 #2 %#1: structure num
376 {
377     \tl_clear:N #2
378     \prop_map_inline:cn { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
379     {

```

Some keys needs the option to format the value, e.g. add brackets for an array, we also need the option to ignore some entries in the properties.

```

380         \cs_if_exist_use:cTF {__tag_struct_format_##1:nnN}
381         {
382             {##1}{##2}#2
383         }
384         {
385             \tl_put_right:Ne #2 { \c_space_tl/##1-##2 }
386         }
387     }
388 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN`.)

`\__tag_struct_format_rolemap:nnN` This two entries should not end in the PDF.  
`\__tag_struct_format_parentrole:nnN`

```

389 \cs_new:Nn\__tag_struct_format_rolemap:nnN{}
390 \cs_new:Nn\__tag_struct_format_parentrole:nnN{}

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_struct_format_rolemap:nnN` and `\__tag_struct_format_parentrole:nnN`.)

`\__tag_struct_format_Ref:nnN` Ref is an array, we store values as a clist of commands that must be executed here, the formatting has to add also brackets.

```

391 \cs_new_protected:Nn\__tag_struct_format_Ref:nnN
392 {
393     \tl_put_right:Nn #3 { ~/#1~[ ] %}
394     \clist_map_inline:nn{ #2 }
395     {
396         ##1 #3
397     }
398     \tl_put_right:Nn #3
399     { %[

```

```

400     \c_space_tl]
401   }
402 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_struct_format_Ref:nnN`.)

`\__tag_struct_write_obj:n` This writes out the structure object. This is done in the finish code, in the tree module and guarded by the tree boolean.

```

403 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_write_obj:n #1 % #1 is the struct num
404 {
405   \prop_if_exist:cTF { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
406   {

```

It can happen that a structure is not used and so has not parent. Simply ignoring it is problematic as it is also recorded in the IDTree, so we make an artifact out of it.

```

407     \prop_get:cnNF { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {P}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
408     {
409       \prop_gput:cne { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {P}
410       {\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{1}}
411       \prop_gput:cne { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {S}{/Artifact}
412       \seq_if_empty:cF {g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq}
413       {
414         \msg_warning:nnee
415         {tag}
416         {struct-orphan}
417         { #1 }
418         {\seq_count:c{g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq}}
419       }
420     }
421     \__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n { #1 }
422     \__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN { #1 } \l__tag_tmpa_tl
423     \pdf_object_write_indexed:nnne
424     { __tag/struct }{ #1 }
425     {dict}
426     {
427       \l__tag_tmpa_tl\c_space_tl
428       /ID-\__tag_struct_get_id:n{#1}
429     }
430   }
431 }
432 {
433   \msg_error:nnn { tag } { struct-no-objnum } { #1}
434 }
435 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_struct_write_obj:n`.)

`\__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` This is the command to insert an annotation into the structure. It can probably be used for xform too.

Annotations used as structure content must

1. add a StructParent integer to their dictionary
2. push the object reference as OBJR object in the structure
3. Add a Structparent/obj-nr reference to the parent tree.

For a link this looks like this

```

    \tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
    \tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
(1)   \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
      { link/URI }
      { StructParent }
      { \int_use:N\c@g_@@_parenttree_obj_int }
    <start link> link text <stop link>
(2+3) \@@_struct_insert_annot:nn {obj ref}{parent num}
      \tag_mc_end:
      \tag_struct_end:

436 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn #1 #2
437   % #1 object reference to the annotation/xform
438   % #2 structparent number
439   {
440     \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_struct_bool
441     {
442       % get the number of the parent structure:
443       \seq_get:NNF
444         \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
445         \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
446         {
447           \msg_error:nn { tag } { struct-faulty-nesting }
448         }
449       % put the obj number of the annot in the kid entry, this also creates
450       % the OBJR object
451       \__tag_property_record:nn {@tag@objr@page@#2 }{ tagabspage }
452       \__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:eee
453       {
454         \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
455       }
456       {
457         #1 %
458       }
459       {
460         \pdf_pageobject_ref:n
461         { \property_ref:nnn {@tag@objr@page@#2 }{ tagabspage }{1} }
462       }
463       % add the parent obj number to the parent tree:
464       \exp_args:Nne
465       \__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn
466       {
467         #2
468       }
469       {
470         \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn
471         { __tag/struct }{ \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
472       }
473       % increase the int:
474       \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int
475     }
476   }
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn`.)

`\__tag_get_data_struct_tag:` this command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current structure tag with the keyword `struct_tag`.

```
477 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_tag:
478   {
479     \exp_args:Ne
480     \tl_tail:n
481     {
482       \prop_item:cn {g__tag_struct_}g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop}{S}
483     }
484   }
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_get_data_struct_tag:.`)

`\__tag_get_data_struct_id:` this command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current structure id with the keyword `struct_id`.

```
485 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_id:
486   {
487     \__tag_struct_get_id:n {\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl}
488   }
489 \</package>
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_get_data_struct_id:.`)

`\__tag_get_data_struct_num:` this command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current structure number with the keyword `struct_num`. We will need to handle nesting

```
490 \<base>
491 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_num:
492   {
493     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
494   }
495 \</base>
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_get_data_struct_num:.`)

`\__tag_get_data_struct_counter:` this command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current state of the structure counter with the keyword `struct_counter`. By comparing the numbers it can be used to check the number of structure commands in a piece of code.

```
496 \<base>
497 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_counter:
498   {
499     \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
500   }
501 \</base>
```

(End of definition for `\__tag_get_data_struct_counter:.`)

## 5 Keys

This are the keys for the user commands. we store the tag in a variable. But we should be careful, it is only reliable at the begin.

This socket is used by the tag key. It allows to switch between the latex-tabs and the standard tags.

```

502 (*package)
503 \socket_new:nn { tag/struct/tag }{1}
504 \socket_new_plug:nnn { tag/struct/tag }{ latex-tags }
505 {
506   \seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / }
507   {#1/\prop_item:Ne\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop{#1}}
508   \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_tl { \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {1} }
509   \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl{ \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {2} }
510   \__tag_check_structure_tag:N \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
511 }
512
513 \socket_new_plug:nnn { tag/struct/tag }{ pdf-tags }
514 {
515   \seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / }
516   {#1/\prop_item:Ne\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop{#1}}
517   \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_tl { \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {1} }
518   \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl{ \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {2} }
519   \__tag_role_get:VVNN
520   \g__tag_struct_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl \l__tag_tmpa_tl \l__tag_tmpb_tl
521   \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_tl {\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
522   \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl{\l__tag_tmpb_tl}
523   \__tag_check_structure_tag:N \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
524 }
525 \socket_assign_plug:nn { tag/struct/tag } {latex-tags}

label (struct key)
stash (struct key) 526 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
parent (struct key) 527 {
firstkid (struct key) 528   label .code:n      =
tag (struct key) 529   {
title (struct key) 530     \prop_gput:Nee\g__tag_struct_label_num_prop
title-o (struct key) 531     {#1}{\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
alt (struct key) 532     \__tag_property_record:eV
actualtext (struct key) 533     {tagpdfstruct-#1}
lang (struct key) 534     \c__tag_property_struct_clist
ref (struct key) 535   },
E (struct key) 536   stash .bool_set:N    = \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool,
537   parent .code:n      =
538   {
539     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
540     {
541       \prop_if_exist_p:c { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {#1}_prop }
542     }
543     {
544       \int_compare_p:nNn {#1}<{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
545     }
546     { \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl { \int_eval:n {#1} } }

```



```

547     {
548         \msg_warning:nnee { tag } { struct-unknown }
549         { \int_eval:n {#1} }
550         { parent~key~ignored }
551     }
552 },
553 parent .default:n      = {-1},
554 firstkid .code:n = { \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_struct_addkid_tl {left} },
555 tag .code:n           = % S property
556 {
557     \socket_use:nn { tag/struct/tag }{#1}
558 },
559 title .code:n         = % T property
560 {
561     \str_set_convert:Nnnn
562     \l__tag_tmpa_str
563     { #1 }
564     { default }
565     { utf16/hex }
566     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
567     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
568     { T }
569     { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
570 },
571 title-o .code:n       = % T property
572 {
573     \str_set_convert:Nonn
574     \l__tag_tmpa_str
575     { #1 }
576     { default }
577     { utf16/hex }
578     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
579     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
580     { T }
581     { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
582 },
583 alt .code:n          = % Alt property
584 {
585     \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
586     {
587         \str_set_convert:Noon
588         \l__tag_tmpa_str
589         { #1 }
590         { default }
591         { utf16/hex }
592         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
593         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
594         { Alt }
595         { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
596     }
597 },
598 alttext .meta:n = {alt=#1},
599 actualtext .code:n = % ActualText property
600 {

```

```

601     \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
602     {
603         \str_set_convert:Noon
604         \l__tag_tmpa_str
605         { #1 }
606         { default }
607         { utf16/hex }
608         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
609         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
610         { ActualText }
611         { <\l__tag_tmpa_str>}
612     }
613 },
614 lang .code:n      = % Lang property
615 {
616     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
617     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
618     { Lang }
619     { (#1) }
620 },
621 }

```

Ref is rather special as its values are often known only at the end of the document. It therefore stores its values as a list of commands which are executed at the end of the document, when the structure elements are written.

```

\__tag_struct_Ref_obj:nN
\__tag_struct_Ref_label:nN
\__tag_struct_Ref_dest:nN
\__tag_struct_Ref_num:nN

```

These commands are helper commands that are stored as a list in the Ref key of a structure. They are executed when the structure elements are written in `\__tag_struct_write_obj`. They are used in `\__tag_struct_format_Ref`. They allow to add a Ref by object reference, label, destname and structure number

```

622 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_Ref_obj:nN #1 #2 %#1 a object reference
623 {
624     \tl_put_right:Ne#2
625     {
626         \c_space_tl#1
627     }
628 }
629
630 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_Ref_label:nN #1 #2 %#1 a label
631 {
632     \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_struct_label_num_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmpb_tl
633     {
634         \tl_put_right:Ne#2
635         {
636             \c_space_tl\tag_struct_object_ref:e{ \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
637         }
638     }
639     {
640         \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{struct-Ref-unknown}{Label~'#1'}
641     }
642 }
643 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_Ref_dest:nN #1 #2 %#1 a dest name
644 {
645     \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmpb_tl

```

```

646     {
647       \tl_put_right:Ne#2
648       {
649         \c_space_tl\tag_struct_object_ref:e{ \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
650       }
651     }
652     {
653       \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{struct-Ref-unknown}{Destination~'#1'}
654     }
655   }
656 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_Ref_num:nN #1 #2 %#1 a structure number
657 {
658   \tl_put_right:Ne#2
659   {
660     \c_space_tl\tag_struct_object_ref:e{ #1 }
661   }
662 }
663

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_Ref\_obj:nN and others.)

**ref** (*struct key*)

```

E (struct key) 664 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
665   {
666     ref .code:n      = % ref property
667     {
668       \clist_map_inline:on {#1}
669       {
670         \tag_struct_gput:nne
671         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}{ref_label}{ ##1 }
672       }
673     },
674     E .code:n      = % E property
675     {
676       \str_set_convert:Nnon
677       \l__tag_tmpa_str
678       { #1 }
679       { default }
680       { utf16/hex }
681       \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
682       { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
683       { E }
684       { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
685     },
686   }

```

**AF** (*struct key*) keys for the AF keys (associated files). They use commands from l3pdffile! The stream

**AFref** (*struct key*) variants use txt as extension to get the mimetype. TODO: check if this should be

**AFinline** (*struct key*) configurable. For math we will perhaps need another extension. AF/AFref is an array

**AFinline-o** (*struct key*) and can be used more than once, so we store it in a tl. which is expanded. AFinline

**texsource** (*struct key*) currently uses the fix extension txt. texsource is a special variant which creates a tex-file,

**mathml** (*struct key*) it expects a tl-var as value (e.g. from math grabbing)

**\g\_\_tag\_struct\_AFobj\_int** This variable is used to number the AF-object names

```

687 \int_new:N\g__tag_struct_AFobj_int

```

(End of definition for \g\_\_tag\_struct\_AFobj\_int.)

```
688 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdffile_embed_stream:nnN {neN}
689 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:nn #1 #2
690 % #1 content, #2 extension
691 {
692   \tl_if_empty:nF{#1}
693   {
694     \group_begin:
695     \int_gincr:N \g__tag_struct_AFobj_int
696     \pdffile_embed_stream:neN
697     {#1}
698     {tag-Afile\int_use:N\g__tag_struct_AFobj_int.#2}
699     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
700     \__tag_struct_add_AF:ee
701     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
702     { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
703     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
704     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
705     { AF }
706     {
707       [
708         \tl_use:c
709         { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_AF_tl }
710       ]
711     }
712     \group_end:
713   }
714 }
715
716 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:nn {on}
717 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_add_AF:nn #1 #2
718 % #1 struct num #2 object reference
719 {
720   \tl_if_exist:cTF
721   {
722     g__tag_struct_#1_AF_tl
723   }
724   {
725     \tl_gput_right:ce
726     { g__tag_struct_#1_AF_tl }
727     { \c_space_tl #2 }
728   }
729   {
730     \tl_new:c
731     { g__tag_struct_#1_AF_tl }
732     \tl_gset:ce
733     { g__tag_struct_#1_AF_tl }
734     { #2 }
735   }
736 }
737 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_add_AF:nn {en,ee}
738 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
739 {
```

```

740 AF .code:n          = % AF property
741 {
742   \pdf_object_if_exist:eTF {#1}
743   {
744     \__tag_struct_add_AF:ee
745     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }{\pdf_object_ref:e {#1}}
746     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
747     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
748     { AF }
749     {
750       [
751         \tl_use:c
752         { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_AF_tl }
753       ]
754     }
755   }
756   {
757     % message?
758   }
759 },
760 AFref .code:n       = % AF property
761 {
762   \tl_if_empty:eF {#1}
763   {
764     \__tag_struct_add_AF:ee { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }{#1}
765     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
766     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
767     { AF }
768     {
769       [
770         \tl_use:c
771         { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_AF_tl }
772       ]
773     }
774   }
775 },
776 ,AFinline .code:n =
777 {
778   \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:nn {#1}{txt}
779 }
780 ,AFinline-o .code:n =
781 {
782   \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:on {#1}{txt}
783 }
784 ,texsource .code:n =
785 {
786   \group_begin:
787   \pdfdict_put:nnn { l_pdffile/Filespec } {Desc}{(TeX~source)}
788   \pdfdict_put:nnn { l_pdffile/Filespec }{AFRelationship} { /Source }
789   \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:on {#1}{tex}
790   \group_end:
791 }
792 ,mathml .code:n =
793 {

```

```

794     \group_begin:
795     \pdfdict_put:nnn { l_pdffile/Filespec } {Desc}{(mathml-representation)}
796     \pdfdict_put:nnn { l_pdffile/Filespec }{AFRelationship} { /Supplement }
797     \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:on {#1}{xml}
798     \group_end:
799   }
800 }

```

**root-AF** (*setup key*) The root structure can take AF keys too, so we provide a key for it. This key is used with `\tagpdfsetup`, not in a structure!

```

801 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
802 {
803   root-AF .code:n =
804   {
805     \pdf_object_if_exist:nTF {#1}
806     {
807       \__tag_struct_add_AF:ee { 1 }{\pdf_object_ref:n {#1}}
808       \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
809       { 1 }
810       { AF }
811       {
812         [
813           \tl_use:c
814           { g__tag_struct_1_AF_tl }
815         ]
816       }
817     }
818   {
819   }
820 }
821 },
822 }

```

## 6 User commands

We allow to set a language by default

`\l__tag_struct_lang_tl`

```

823 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_lang_tl
824 \package

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_struct_lang_tl`.)

`\tag_struct_begin:n`  
`\tag_struct_end:`

```

825 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_begin:n #1 {\int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
826 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_end: {}
827 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_end:n {}
828 <*package | debug>
829 <package>\cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_begin:n #1 % #1 key-val
830 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_begin:n #1 % #1 key-val
831 {
832 <package>\__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
833 <debug>\__tag_check_if_active_struct:TF

```

```

834     {
835         \group_begin:
836         \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
837         \__tag_prop_new:c { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
838 <debug>         \prop_new:c { g__tag_struct_debug_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
839         \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n { \int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
840         \__tag_seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_kids_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_seq }
841 <debug>         \seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_seq }
842         \pdf_object_new_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }
843         { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
844         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn
845         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
846         { Type }
847         { /StructElem }
848         \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_struct_lang_tl
849         {
850             \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
851             { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
852             { Lang }
853             { (\l__tag_struct_lang_tl) }
854         }
855         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn
856         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
857         { Type }
858         { /StructElem }
859
860         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl {-1}
861         \keys_set:nn { __tag / struct } { #1 }
862
863         \__tag_struct_set_tag_info:eVV
864         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
865         \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
866         \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
867         \__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }

```

The structure number of the parent is either taken from the stack or has been set with the parent key.

```

867         \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl } = { -1 }
868         {
869             \seq_get:NNF
870             \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
871             \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
872             {
873                 \msg_error:nn { tag } { struct-faulty-nesting }
874             }
875         }
876         \seq_gpush:NV \g__tag_struct_stack_seq          \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
877         \__tag_role_get:VVNN
878         \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
879         \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
880         \l__tag_struct_roletag_tl
881         \l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl

```

to target role and role NS

```

882         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne

```

```

883         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
884     { rolemap }
885     {
886         {\l__tag_struct_roletag_tl}{\l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl}
887     }

```

we also store which role to use for parent/child test. If the role is one of Part, Div, NonStruct we have to retrieve it from the parent. If the structure is stashed, this must be updated!

```

888     \str_case:VnTF \l__tag_struct_roletag_tl
889     {
890     {Part} {}
891     {Div} {}
892     {NonStruct} {}
893     }
894     {
895     \prop_get:cnNT
896     { g__tag_struct_ \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _prop }
897     { parentrole }
898     \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
899     {
900     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nno
901     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
902     { parentrole }
903     {
904     \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
905     }
906     }
907     }
908     {
909     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:mne
910     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
911     { parentrole }
912     {
913     {\l__tag_struct_roletag_tl}{\l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl}
914     }
915     }
916     \seq_gpush:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
917     {{\g__tag_struct_tag_tl}{\l__tag_struct_roletag_tl}}
918     \tl_gset:NV \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
919     %\seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
920     \bool_if:NF
921     \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
922     {

```

check if the tag can be used inside the parent. It only makes sense, if the structure is actually used here, so it is guarded by the stash boolean. For now we ignore the namespace!

```

923     \__tag_struct_get_parentrole:eNN
924     {\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl}
925     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
926     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
927     \__tag_check_parent_child:VVVVN
928     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl

```



```

929         \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
930         \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
931         \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
932         \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
933     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl}<0
934     {
935         \prop_get:cnN
936         { g__tag_struct_ \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _prop}
937         {S}
938         \l__tag_tmpa_tl
939         \quark_if_no_value:NT\l__tag_tmpa_tl{\tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl{UNKNOWN}}
940         \msg_warning:nneee
941         { tag }
942         {role-parent-child}
943         { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl/\l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }
944         { \g__tag_struct_tag_tl/\g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl }
945         { not~allowed~
946           (struct~\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl,~\l__tag_tmpa_tl
947             \c_space_tl-->~struct~\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int})
948         }
949         \cs_set_eq:NN \l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
950         \cs_set_eq:NN \l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
951         \__tag_role_remap:
952         \cs_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_struct_tag_tl \l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl
953         \cs_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl \l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl
954         \__tag_struct_set_tag_info:eVV
955         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
956         \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
957         \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
958     }

```

Set the Parent.

```

959     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
960     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
961     { P }
962     {
963         \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct} { \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
964     }
965
966     %record this structure as kid:
967     %\tl_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
968     %\tl_show:N \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
969     \use:c { __tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_ \l__tag_struct_addkid_tl :ee }
970     { \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
971     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
972     %\prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_ \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop }
973     %\seq_show:c { g__tag_struct_kids_ \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _seq }
974 }

```

the debug mode stores in second prop and replaces value with more suitable ones. (If the structure is updated later this gets perhaps lost, but well ...) This must be done outside of the stash boolean.

```

974 <debug>         \prop_gset_eq:cc
975 <debug>         { g__tag_struct_debug_ \int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
976 <debug>         { g__tag_struct_ \int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }

```

```

977 <debug>          \prop_gput:cne
978 <debug>          { g__tag_struct_debug\_int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
979 <debug>          { P }
980 <debug>          {
981 <debug>              \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
982 <debug>              {no-parent:~stashed}
983 <debug>              {
984 <debug>                  parent~structure:~\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl\c_space_tl =~
985 <debug>                  \prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct\_l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _p
986 <debug>              }
987 <debug>          }
988 <debug>          \prop_gput:cne
989 <debug>          { g__tag_struct_debug\_int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
990 <debug>          { NS }
991 <debug>          { \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl }

992          %\prop_show:c { g__tag_struct\_g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop }
993          %\seq_show:c {g__tag_struct_kids\_l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _seq}
994 <debug> \__tag_debug_struct_begin_insert:n { #1 }
995          \group_end:
996      }
997 <debug>{ \__tag_debug_struct_begin_ignore:n { #1 }}
998 }
999 <package>\cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_struct_end:
1000 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_struct_end:
1001 { %take the current structure num from the stack:
1002   %the objects are written later, lua mode hasn't all needed info yet
1003   %\seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
1004 <package>\__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1005 <debug>\__tag_check_if_active_struct:TF
1006   {
1007       \seq_gpop:NN \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1008       \seq_gpop:NNTF \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1009       {
1010           \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:o { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1011       }
1012       { \__tag_check_no_open_struct: }
1013       % get the previous one, shouldn't be empty as the root should be there
1014       \seq_get:NNTF \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1015       {
1016           \tl_gset:NV \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1017       }
1018       {
1019           \__tag_check_no_open_struct:
1020       }
1021       \seq_get:NNT \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1022       {
1023           \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1024           { \exp_last_unbraced:NV\use_i:nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
1025           \prop_get:NVNT\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop \g__tag_struct_tag_tl\l__tag_tmpa_tl
1026           {
1027               \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
1028           }
1029       }
1030 <debug>\__tag_debug_struct_end_insert:

```

```

1031     }
1032 <debug>{\_tag_debug_struct_end_ignore:}
1033   }
1034
1035 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_end:n #1
1036 {
1037 <debug>   \_tag_check_if_active_struct:T{\_tag_debug_struct_end_check:n{#1}}
1038   \tag_struct_end:
1039 }
1040 </package | debug>

```

(End of definition for \tag\_struct\_begin:n and \tag\_struct\_end:. These functions are documented on page 102.)

**\tag\_struct\_use:n** This command allows to use a stashed structure in another place. TODO: decide how it should be guarded. Probably by the struct-check.

```

1041 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_use:n #1 {}
1042 <*package | debug>
1043 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_use:n #1 %#1 is the label
1044 {
1045   \_tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1046   {
1047     \prop_if_exist:cTF
1048     { g__tag_struct\_property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{unknown}_prop } %
1049     {
1050       \_tag_check_struct_used:n {#1}
1051       %add the label structure as kid to the current structure (can be the root)
1052       \_tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:ee
1053       { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1054       { \property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{1} }
1055       %add the current structure to the labeled one as parents
1056       \_tag_prop_gput:cne
1057       { g__tag_struct\_property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{1}_prop }
1058       { P }
1059       {
1060         \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { \_tag/struct } { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1061       }

```

debug code

```

1062 <debug>   \prop_gput:cne
1063 <debug>   { g__tag_struct_debug\_property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{1}_pr
1064 <debug>   { P }
1065 <debug>   {
1066 <debug>     parent~structure:~\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl\c_space_tl=~
1067 <debug>     \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1068 <debug>   }

```

check if the tag is allowed as child. Here we have to retrieve the tag info for the child, while the data for the parent is in the global tl-vars:

```

1069   \_tag_struct_get_parentrole:eNN
1070   { \property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{1} }
1071   \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1072   \l__tag_tmpb_tl
1073   \_tag_check_parent_child:VVVVN
1074   \g__tag_struct_tag_tl

```

```

1075     \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
1076     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1077     \l__tag_tmpb_tl
1078     \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
1079 \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl}<0
1080 {
1081     \cs_set_eq:NN \l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1082     \cs_set_eq:NN \l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
1083     \__tag_role_remap:
1084     \cs_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_struct_tag_tl \l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl
1085     \cs_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl \l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl
1086     \__tag_struct_set_tag_info:eVV
1087     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1088     \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1089     \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
1090 }
1091 }
1092 {
1093     \msg_warning:nnn{ tag }{struct-label-unknown}{#1}
1094 }
1095 }
1096 }
1097 \endpackage|debug)

```

(End of definition for `\tag_struct_use:n`. This function is documented on page 102.)

`\tag_struct_use_num:n` This command allows to use a stashed structure in another place. differently to the previous command it doesn't use a label but directly a structure number to find the parent. TODO: decide how it should be guarded. Probably by the struct-check.

```

1098 \base\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_use_num:n #1 {}
1099 \*package|debug)
1100 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_use_num:n #1 %1 is structure number
1101 {
1102     \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1103     {
1104         \prop_if_exist:cTF
1105         { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } %
1106         {
1107             \prop_get:cnNT
1108             {g__tag_struct_#1_prop}
1109             {P}
1110             \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1111             {
1112                 \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice} {#1}
1113             }
1114             %add the \#1 structure as kid to the current structure (can be the root)
1115             \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:ee
1116             { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1117             { #1 }
1118             %add the current structure to \#1 as parent
1119             \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1120             { #1 }
1121             { P }
1122             {

```

```

1123         \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{ \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
1124     }
1125     <debug>         \prop_gput:cne
1126     <debug>         { g__tag_struct_debug_#1_prop }
1127     <debug>         { P }
1128     <debug>         {
1129     <debug>             parent~structure:~\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl\c_space_tl=~
1130     <debug>             \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1131     <debug>         }

```

check if the tag is allowed as child. Here we have to retrieve the tag info for the child, while the data for the parent is in the global tl-vars:

```

1132         \__tag_struct_get_parentrole:eNN
1133         {#1}
1134         \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1135         \l__tag_tmpb_tl
1136     \__tag_check_parent_child:VVVVN
1137     \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1138     \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
1139     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1140     \l__tag_tmpb_tl
1141     \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
1142     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl}<0
1143     {
1144         \cs_set_eq:NN \l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1145         \cs_set_eq:NN \l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
1146         \__tag_role_remap:
1147         \cs_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_struct_tag_tl \l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl
1148         \cs_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl \l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl
1149         \__tag_struct_set_tag_info:eVV
1150         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1151         \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1152         \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
1153     }
1154     }
1155     {
1156     \msg_warning:nnn{ tag }{struct-label-unknown}{#1}
1157     }
1158     }
1159 }
1160 </package | debug>

```

*(End of definition for \tag\_struct\_use\_num:n. This function is documented on page 102.)*

**\tag\_struct\_object\_ref:n** This is a command that allows to reference a structure. The argument is the number which can be get for the current structure with `\tag_get:n{struct_num}` TODO check if it should be in base too.

```

1161 <*package>
1162 \cs_new:Npn \tag_struct_object_ref:n #1
1163 {
1164     \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn {__tag/struct}{ #1 }
1165 }
1166 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tag_struct_object_ref:n {e}
1167 </package>

```

(End of definition for `\tag_struct_object_ref:n`. This function is documented on page 102.)

`\tag_struct_gput:nnn` This is a command that allows to update the data of a structure. This often can't be done simply by replacing the value, as we have to preserve and extend existing content. We use therefore dedicated functions adjusted to the key in question. The first argument is the number of the structure, the second a keyword referring to a function, the third the value. Currently the existing keywords are all related to the Ref key (an array). The keyword `ref` takes as value an explicit object reference to a structure. The keyword `ref_label` expects as value a label name (from a label set in a `\tagstructbegin` command). The keyword `ref_dest` expects a destination name set with `\MakeLinkTarget`. It then will refer to the structure in which this `\MakeLinkTarget` was used. At last the keyword `ref_num` expects a structure number.

```
1168 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_gput:nnn #1 #2 #3{}
1169 <*package>
1170 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_gput:nnn #1 #2 #3
1171 {
1172   \cs_if_exist_use:cF {__tag_struct_gput_data_#2:nn}
1173   { %warning??
1174     \use_none:nn
1175   }
1176   {#1}{#3}
1177 }
1178 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tag_struct_gput:nnn {ene,nne}
1179 </package>
```

(End of definition for `\tag_struct_gput:nnn`. This function is documented on page 103.)

`\__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn`

```
1180 <*package>
1181 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn #1 #2 #3
1182   % #1 receiving struct num, #2 key word #3 value
1183   {
1184     \prop_get:cnNTF
1185     { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
1186     { Ref }
1187     \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
1188     {
1189       \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
1190       {\cs:w __tag_struct_Ref_#2:nN \cs_end: {#3},}
1191     }
1192     {
1193       \tl_set:No \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
1194       {\cs:w __tag_struct_Ref_#2:nN \cs_end: {#3},}
1195     }
1196     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nno
1197     { #1 }
1198     { Ref }
1199     { \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl }
1200   }
1201 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref:nn #1 #2
1202   {
1203     \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn {#1}{obj}{#2}
1204   }
```

```

1205 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_label:nn #1 #2
1206 {
1207   \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn {#1}{label}{#2}
1208 }
1209 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_dest:nn #1 #2
1210 {
1211   \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn {#1}{dest}{#2}
1212 }
1213 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_num:nn #1 #2
1214 {
1215   \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn {#1}{num}{#2}
1216 }
1217
1218 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref:nn {ee,no}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_gput\_data\_ref\_aux:nnn.)

```

\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn
\tag_struct_insert_annot:ee
\tag_struct_insert_annot:ee
\tag_struct_parent_int:

```

This are the user command to insert annotations. They must be used together to get the numbers right. They use a counter to the StructParent and \tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn increases the counter given back by \tag\_struct\_parent\_int:.

It must be used together with \tag\_struct\_parent\_int: to insert an annotation. TODO: decide how it should be guarded if tagging is deactivated.

```

1219 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_insert_annot:nn #1 #2 % #1 should be an object reference
1220 % #2 struct parent num
1221 {
1222   \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1223   {
1224     \__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn {#1}{#2}
1225   }
1226 }
1227
1228 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tag_struct_insert_annot:nn {xx,ee}
1229 \cs_new:Npn \tag_struct_parent_int: {\int_use:c { c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int }}
1230
1231 \</package>
1232

```

(End of definition for \tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn and \tag\_struct\_parent\_int:. These functions are documented on page 102.)

## 7 Attributes and attribute classes

```

1233 \<header>
1234 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-attr-code} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
1235 {part of tagpdf - code related to attributes and attribute classes}
1236 \</header>

```

### 7.1 Variables

\g\_\_tag\_attr\_entries\_prop \g\_\_@@\_attr\_entries\_prop will store attribute names and their dictionary content.  
\g\_\_tag\_attr\_class\_used\_prop \g\_\_@@\_attr\_class\_used\_prop will hold the attributes which have been used as class name. \l\_\_tag\_attr\_value\_tl is used to build the attribute array or key. Every time an attribute is used for the first time, and object is created with its content, the name-object reference relation is stored in \g\_\_@@\_attr\_objref\_prop

```

1237 (*package)
1238 \prop_new:N \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
1239 \prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_attr_class_used_prop
1240 \tl_new:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1241 \prop_new:N \g__tag_attr_objref_prop %will contain obj num of used attributes

```

This seq is currently kept for compatibility with the table code.

```

1242 \seq_new:N\g__tag_attr_class_used_seq

```

(End of definition for \g\_\_tag\_attr\_entries\_prop and others.)

## 7.2 Commands and keys

`\__tag_attr_new_entry:nn` This allows to define attributes. Defined attributes are stored in a global property. `role/new-attribute (setup-key)` `role/new-attribute` expects two brace group, the name and the content. The content typically needs an /O key for the owner. An example look like this.

TODO: consider to put them directly in the ClassMap, that is perhaps more effective.

```

\tagpdfsetup
{
  role/new-attribute =
    {TH-col}{/O /Table /Scope /Column},
  role/new-attribute =
    {TH-row}{/O /Table /Scope /Row},
}

1243 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1 #2 %#1:name, #2: content
1244 {
1245   \prop_gput:Nen \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
1246   {\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#1}}{#2}
1247 }
1248
1249 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn {ee}
1250 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
1251 {
1252   role/new-attribute .code:n =
1253   {
1254     \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1
1255   }

```

deprecated name

```

1256   ,newattribute .code:n =
1257   {
1258     \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1
1259   },
1260 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_attr\_new\_entry:nn, role/new-attribute (setup-key), and newattribute (deprecated). These functions are documented on page 105.)

`attribute-class (struct key)` `attribute-class` has to store the used attribute names so that they can be added to the ClassMap later.

```

1261 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
1262 {
1263   attribute-class .code:n =

```



```

1264     {
1265     \clist_set:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_clist { #1 }
1266     \seq_set_from_clist:NN \l__tag_tmpb_seq \l__tag_tmpa_clist
we convert the names into pdf names with slash
1267     \seq_set_map_e:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_seq \l__tag_tmpb_seq
1268     {
1269     \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {##1}
1270     }
1271     \seq_map_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
1272     {
1273     \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
1274     {
1275     \msg_error:nnn { tag } { attr-unknown } { ##1 }
1276     }
1277     \prop_gput:Nnn\g__tag_attr_class_used_prop { ##1} {}
1278     }
1279     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1280     {
1281     \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
1282     \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq { \c_space_tl }
1283     \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
1284     }
1285     \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 0 }
1286     {
1287     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1288     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1289     { C }
1290     { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
1291     %\prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
1292     }
1293     }
1294     }

```

attribute (*struct key*)

```

1295 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
1296 {
1297     attribute .code:n = % A property (attribute, value currently a dictionary)
1298     {
1299     \clist_set:Ne          \l__tag_tmpa_clist { #1 }
1300     \clist_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_clist
1301     {
1302     \seq_set_from_clist:NN \l__tag_tmpb_seq \l__tag_tmpa_clist
we convert the names into pdf names with slash
1303     \seq_set_map_e:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_seq \l__tag_tmpb_seq
1304     {
1305     \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {##1}
1306     }
1307     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1308     {
1309     \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
1310     }
1311     \seq_map_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
1312     {

```

```

1313     \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
1314     {
1315       \msg_error:nnn { tag } { attr-unknown } { ##1 }
1316     }
1317     \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1}
1318     {%\prop_show:N \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
1319       \pdf_object_unnamed_write:ne
1320       { dict }
1321       {
1322         \prop_item:Nn\g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
1323       }
1324       \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1} {\pdf_object_ref_last:}
1325     }
1326     \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1327     {
1328       \c_space_tl
1329       \prop_item:Nn \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1}
1330     }
1331     % \tl_show:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1332     }
1333     \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1334     { %[
1335       \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}%
1336     }
1337     % \tl_show:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1338     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1339     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1340     { A }
1341     { \l__tag_attr_value_tl }
1342   }
1343 },
1344 }
1345 \end{package}

```

## Part IX

# The tagpdf-luatex.def Driver for luatex Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*luatex>
3 \ProvidesExplFile {tagpdf-luatex.def} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4   {tagpdf-driver-for-luatex}
```

## 1 Loading the lua

The space code requires that the fall back font has been loaded and initialized, so we force that first. But perhaps this could be done in the kernel.

```
5 {
6   \fontencoding{TU}\fontfamily{lmr}\fontseries{m}\fontshape{n}\fontsize{10pt}{10pt}\selectfont
7 }
8 \lua_now:e { tagpdf=require('tagpdf.lua') }
```

The following defines wrappers around prop and seq commands to store the data also in lua tables. I probably want also lua tables I put them in the ltx.@@.tables namespaces. The tables will be named like the variables but without backslash. To access such a table with a dynamical name create a string and then use ltx.@@.tables[string]. Old code, I'm not quite sure if this was a good idea. Now I have mix of table in ltx.@@.tables and ltx.@@.mc/struct. And a lot is probably not needed. TODO: this should be cleaned up, but at least roles are currently using the table!

```

  \__tag_prop_new:N
  \__tag_seq_new:N
  \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn
  \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn
  \__tag_seq_gput_left:Nn
  \__tag_seq_item:cn
  \__tag_prop_item:cn
  \__tag_seq_show:N
  \__tag_prop_show:N
9 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_new:N #1
10 {
11   \prop_new:N #1
12   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 = {} }
13 }
14
15 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_new_linked:N #1
16 {
17   \prop_new_linked:N #1
18   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 = {} }
19 }
20
21
22 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_new:N #1
23 {
24   \seq_new:N #1
25   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 = {} }
26 }
27
28
29 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn #1 #2 #3
```

```

30 {
31   \prop_gput:Nnn #1 { #2 } { #3 }
32   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 ["#2"] = "\lua_escape:n{#3}" }
33 }
34
35
36 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn #1 #2
37 {
38   \seq_gput_right:Nn #1 { #2 }
39   \lua_now:e { table.insert(ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1, "#2") }
40 }

```

this inserts on the right of the lua table, but as the lua table is not used for kids this is ignored for now.

```

41 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_gput_left:Nn #1 #2
42 {
43   \seq_gput_left:Nn #1 { #2 }
44   \lua_now:e { table.insert(ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1, "#2") }
45 }
46
47 %Hm not quite sure about the naming
48 \cs_set:Npn \__tag_seq_item:cn #1 #2
49 {
50   \lua_now:e { tex.print(ltx.__tag.tables.#1[#2]) }
51 }
52
53 \cs_set:Npn \__tag_prop_item:cn #1 #2
54 {
55   \lua_now:e { tex.print(ltx.__tag.tables.#1["#2"]) }
56 }
57
58 %for debugging commands that show both the seq/prop and the lua tables
59 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_show:N #1
60 {
61   \seq_show:N #1
62   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.log ("lua~sequence~array~\cs_to_str:N#1",1) }
63   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq (ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1) }
64 }
65
66 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_show:N #1
67 {
68   \prop_show:N #1
69   \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.trace.log ("lua~property~table~\cs_to_str:N#1",1) }
70   \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop (ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1) }
71 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_prop\_new:N and others.)

```

72 </luatex>

```

The module declaration

```

73 <*lua>
74 -- tagpdf.lua
75 -- Ulrike Fischer
76
77 local ProvidesLuaModule = {

```

```

78     name          = "tagpdf",
79     version       = "0.99i",          --TAGVERSION
80     date          = "2024-11-19", --TAGDATE
81     description   = "tagpdf lua code",
82     license       = "The LATEX Project Public License 1.3c"
83 }
84
85 if luatexbase and luatexbase.provides_module then
86   luatexbase.provides_module (ProvidesLuaModule)
87 end
88
89 --[[
90 The code has quite probably a number of problems
91 - more variables should be local instead of global
92 - the naming is not always consistent due to the development of the code
93 - the traversing of the shipout box must be tested with more complicated setups
94 - it should probably handle more node types
95 -
96 --]]
97

```

Some comments about the lua structure.

```

98 --[[
99 the main table is named ltx.__tag. It contains the functions and also the data
100 collected during the compilation.
101
102 ltx.__tag.mc      will contain mc connected data.
103 ltx.__tag.struct will contain structure related data.
104 ltx.__tag.page    will contain page data
105 ltx.__tag.tables contains also data from mc and struct (from older code). This needs cleaning
106                There are certainly dublettes, but I don't dare yet ...
107 ltx.__tag.func    will contain (public) functions.
108 ltx.__tag.trace   will contain tracing/logging functions.
109 local functions starts with __
110 functions meant for users will be in ltx.tag
111
112 functions
113 ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from (tag):   takes a tag (string) and returns the id number
114 ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from (tag): takes a tag (string) and prints (to tex) the id number
115 ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from (num):   takes a num and returns the tag
116 ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from (num): takes a num and prints (to tex) the tag
117 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data (num,key,data): stores key=data in ltx.__tag.mc[num]
118 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label (label,num): stores label=num in ltx.__tag.mc.labels
119 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcnum,kid,page): stores the mc-kids of mcnum on page page
120 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page(mcnum,mcpagecnt,page): stores in the page table the number of
121 ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs (structnum,mcnum): stores relations structnum<->mcnum (abs
122 ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (mcnum): inserts the /K entries for mcnum by wandering through
123 ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements(box,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,name,mctypeprev) : the main
124 ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (): a wrapper around the core function which inserts the last EN
125 ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (page): outputs the entries of the parenttree for this
126 ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree(): outputs the content of the parenttree
127 ltx.__tag.func.pdf_object_ref(name,index): outputs the object reference for the object name
128 ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon(), ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff(): (de)activates the marking of po
129 ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (num,loglevel): shows ltx.__tag.mc[num] is the current log leve
130 ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data (max,loglevel): shows a maximum about mc's if the current l

```

```

131 ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq: shows a sequence (array)
132 ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data (num): shows data of structure num
133 ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop: shows a prop
134 ltx.__tag.trace.log
135 ltx.__tag.trace.showspace : boolean
136 --]]
137

```

This set-ups the main attribute registers. The mc\_type attribute stores the type (P, Span etc) encoded as a num, The mc\_cnt attribute stores the absolute number and allows so to see if a node belongs to the same mc-chunk.

The interwordspace attr is set by the function @@\_mark\_spaces, and marks the place where spaces should be inserted. The interwordfont attr is set by the function @@\_mark\_spaces too and stores the font, so that we can decide which font to use for the real space char. The interwordspaceOff attr allows to locally suppress the insertion of real space chars, e.g. when they are inserted by other means (e.g. with \char).

```

138 local mctypeattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_mc_type_attr")
139 local mcntattributeid   = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_mc_cnt_attr")
140 local iwspaceOffattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordspaceOff_attr")
141 local iwspaceattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordspace_attr")
142 local iwfontattributeid  = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordfont_attr")

```

with this token we can query the state of the boolean and so detect if unmarked nodes should be marked as attributes

```

143 local tagunmarkedbool= token.create("g__tag_tagunmarked_bool")
144 local truebool       = token.create("c_true_bool")

```

with this token we can query the state of the softhyphen boolean and so detect if hyphens from hyphenation should be replaced by soft-hyphens.

```

145 local softhyphenbool = token.create("g__tag_softhyphen_bool")

```

Now a number of local versions from global tables. Not all is perhaps needed, most node variants were copied from lua-debug.

```

146 local catlatex      = luatexbase.registernumber("catcodetable@latex")
147 local tableinsert   = table.insert
148 local nodeid        = node.id
149 local nodecopy      = node.copy
150 local nodegetattribute = node.get_attribute
151 local nodesetattribute = node.set_attribute
152 local nodehasattribute = node.has_attribute
153 local nodenew       = node.new
154 local nodetail      = node.tail
155 local nodeslide     = node.slide
156 local noderemove    = node.remove
157 local nodetraverseid = node.traverse_id
158 local nodetraverse  = node.traverse
159 local nodeinsertafter = node.insert_after
160 local nodeinsertbefore = node.insert_before
161 local pdfpageref    = pdf.pageref
162
163 local fonthashes    = fonts.hashes
164 local identifiers   = fonthashes.identifiers
165 local fontid        = font.id
166
167 local HLIST         = node.id("hlist")

```

```

168 local VLIST          = node.id("vlist")
169 local RULE           = node.id("rule")
170 local DISC           = node.id("disc")
171 local GLUE           = node.id("glue")
172 local GLYPH          = node.id("glyph")
173 local KERN           = node.id("kern")
174 local PENALTY        = node.id("penalty")
175 local LOCAL_PAR      = node.id("local_par")
176 local MATH           = node.id("math")

```

```

177
178 local explicit_disc = 1
179 local regular_disc = 3

```

Now we setup the main table structure. ltx is used by other latex code too!

```

180 ltx          = ltx          or { }
181 ltx.__tag    = ltx.__tag    or { }
182 ltx.__tag.mc = ltx.__tag.mc or { } -- mc data
183 ltx.__tag.struct = ltx.__tag.struct or { } -- struct data
184 ltx.__tag.tables = ltx.__tag.tables or { } -- tables created with new prop and new seq.
185                                     -- wasn't a so great idea ...
186                                     -- g__tag_role_tags_seq used by tag<-> is in this tab
187                                     -- used for pure lua tables too now!
188 ltx.__tag.page = ltx.__tag.page or { } -- page data, currently only i->{0->mcnum,1->mc
189 ltx.__tag.trace = ltx.__tag.trace or { } -- show commands
190 ltx.__tag.func = ltx.__tag.func or { } -- functions
191 ltx.__tag.conf = ltx.__tag.conf or { } -- configuration variables

```

## 2 Logging functions

`__tag_log` This rather simple log function takes as argument a message (string) and a number and will output the message to the log/terminal if the current loglevel is greater or equal than num.

```

192 local __tag_log =
193   function (message,loglevel)
194     if (loglevel or 3) <= tex.count["l__tag_loglevel_int"] then
195       texio.write_nl("tagpdf: ".. message)
196     end
197   end
198
199 ltx.__tag.trace.log = __tag_log

```

(End of definition for `__tag_log` and `ltx.__tag.trace.log`.)

`ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq` This shows the content of a seq as stored in the tables table. It is used by the `\@@_seq_show:N` function. It is not used in user commands, only for debugging, and so requires log level >0.

```

200 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq (seq)
201   if (type(seq) == "table") then
202     for i,v in ipairs(seq) do
203       __tag_log ("[" .. i .. "] => " .. tostring(v),1)
204     end
205   else
206     __tag_log ("sequence " .. tostring(seq) .. " not found",1)

```

```

207 end
208 end

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq.)

```

`__tag_pairs_prop` This shows the content of a prop as stored in the tables table. It is used by the  
`ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop` \@@\_prop\_show:N function.

```

209 local __tag_pairs_prop =
210 function (prop)
211   local a = {}
212   for n in pairs(prop) do tableinsert(a, n) end
213   table.sort(a)
214   local i = 0           -- iterator variable
215   local iter = function () -- iterator function
216     i = i + 1
217     if a[i] == nil then return nil
218     else return a[i], prop[a[i]]
219     end
220   end
221   return iter
222 end

```

```

223
224
225 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop (prop)
226   if (type(prop) == "table") then
227     for i,v in __tag_pairs_prop (prop) do
228       __tag_log ("[" .. i .. "]" => " .. tostring(v),1)
229     end
230   else
231     __tag_log ("prop " .. tostring(prop) .. " not found or not a table",1)
232   end
233 end

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_pairs\_prop and ltx.\_\_tag.trace.show\_prop.)

`ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data` This shows some data for a mc given by num. If something is shown depends on the log  
level. The function is used by the following function and then in \ShowTagging

```

234 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (num,loglevel)
235   if ltx.__tag and ltx.__tag.mc and ltx.__tag.mc[num] then
236     for k,v in pairs(ltx.__tag.mc[num]) do
237       __tag_log ("mc"..num..": "..tostring(k)..=>"..tostring(v),loglevel)
238     end
239     if ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"] then
240       __tag_log ("mc" .. num .. " has " .. #ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"] .. " kids",loglevel)
241       for k,v in ipairs(ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"]) do
242         __tag_log ("mc " .. num .. " kid "..k.." =>" .. v.kid.." on page " ..v.page,loglevel)
243       end
244     end
245   else
246     __tag_log ("mc"..num.." not found",loglevel)
247   end
248 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.trace.show\_mc\_data.)



`ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data` This shows data for the mc's between `min` and `max` (numbers). It is used by the `\ShowTagging` function.

```
249 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data (min,max,loglevel)
250   for i = min, max do
251     ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (i,loglevel)
252   end
253   texio.write_nl("")
254 end
```

*(End of definition for `ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data`.)*

`ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data` This function shows some struct data. Unused but kept for debugging.

```
255 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data (num)
256   if ltx.__tag and ltx.__tag.struct and ltx.__tag.struct[num] then
257     for k,v in ipairs(ltx.__tag.struct[num]) do
258       __tag_log ("struct "..num..": "..tostring(k).."=>"..tostring(v),1)
259     end
260   else
261     __tag_log ("struct "..num.." not found ",1)
262   end
263 end
```

*(End of definition for `ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data`.)*

## 3 Helper functions

### 3.1 Retrieve data functions

`__tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag` This takes a node as argument and returns the mc-cnt, the mc-type and and the tag (calculated from the mc-cnt).

```
264 local __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag = function (n)
265   local mccnt      = nodegetattribute(n,mccntattributeid) or -1
266   local mctype     = nodegetattribute(n,mctypeattributeid) or -1
267   local tag        = ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from(mctype)
268   return mccnt,mctype,tag
269 end
```

*(End of definition for `__tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag`.)*

`__tag_get_mathsubtype` This function allows to detect if we are at the begin or the end of math. It takes as argument a mathnode.

```
270 local function __tag_get_mathsubtype (mathnode)
271   if mathnode.subtype == 0 then
272     subtype = "beginmath"
273   else
274     subtype = "endmath"
275   end
276   return subtype
277 end
```

*(End of definition for `__tag_get_mathsubtype`.)*

ltx.\_\_tag.tables.role\_tag\_attribute The first is a table with key a tag and value a number (the attribute) The second is an array with the attribute value as key.

```
278 ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute = {}
279 ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag = {}

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute.)
```

ltx.\_\_tag.func.alloctag

```
280 local __tag_alloctag =
281   function (tag)
282     if not ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag] then
283       table.insert(ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag,tag)
284       ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag]=#ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag
285       __tag_log ("Add "..tag.." "..ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag],3)
286     end
287   end
288 ltx.__tag.func.alloctag = __tag_alloctag

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.alloctag.)
```

\_\_tag\_get\_num\_from These functions take as argument a string tag, and return the number under which is it recorded (and so the attribute value). The first function outputs the number for lua, ltx.\_\_tag.func.get\_num\_from while the output function outputs to tex. ltx.\_\_tag.func.output\_num\_from

```
289 local __tag_get_num_from =
290   function (tag)
291     if ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag] then
292       a= ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag]
293     else
294       a= -1
295     end
296     return a
297   end
298
299 ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from = __tag_get_num_from
300
301 function ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from (tag)
302   local num = __tag_get_num_from (tag)
303   tex.sprint(catlatex,num)
304   if num == -1 then
305     __tag_log ("Unknown tag "..tag.." used")
306   end
307 end
```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_get\_num\_from, ltx.\_\_tag.func.get\_num\_from, and ltx.\_\_tag.func.output\_num\_from.)

\_\_tag\_get\_tag\_from These functions are the opposites to the previous function: they take as argument a number (the attribute value) and return the string tag. The first function outputs the string for lua, while the output function outputs to tex. ltx.\_\_tag.func.get\_tag\_from ltx.\_\_tag.func.output\_tag\_from

```
308 local __tag_get_tag_from =
309   function (num)
310     if ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag[num] then
311       a = ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag[num]
312     else
```

```

313     a= "UNKNOWN"
314   end
315   return a
316 end
317
318 ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from = __tag_get_tag_from
319
320 function ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from (num)
321   tex.sprint(catlatex,__tag_get_tag_from (num))
322 end

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_get\_tag\_from, ltx.\_\_tag.func.get\_tag\_from, and ltx.\_\_tag.func.output\_tag\_from.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_data This function stores for key=data for mc-chunk num. It is used in the tagpdf-mc code, to store for example the tag string, and the raw options.

```

323 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data (num,key,data)
324   ltx.__tag.mc[num] = ltx.__tag.mc[num] or { }
325   ltx.__tag.mc[num][key] = data
326   __tag_log ("INFO TEX-STORE-MC-DATA: "..num.." => "..tostring(key).. " => "..tostring(data),3)
327 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_data.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_label This function stores the label=num relationship in the labels subtable. TODO: this is probably unused and can go.

```

328 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label (label,num)
329   ltx.__tag.mc["labels"] = ltx.__tag.mc["labels"] or { }
330   ltx.__tag.mc.labels[label] = num
331 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_label.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_kid This function is used in the traversing code. It stores a sub-chunk of a mc mcnum into the kids table.

```

332 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcnum,kid,page)
333   ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-STORE-MC-KID: "..mcnum.." => " .. kid.." on page " .. page,3)
334   ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] or { }
335   local kidtable = {kid=kid,page=page}
336   tableinsert(ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"], kidtable )
337 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_kid.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.mc\_num\_of\_kids This function returns the number of kids a mc mcnum has. We need to account for the case that a mc can have no kids.

```

338 function ltx.__tag.func.mc_num_of_kids (mcnum)
339   local num = 0
340   if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] and ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] then
341     num = #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"]
342   end
343   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO MC-KID-NUMBERS: " .. mcnum .. "has " .. num .. "KIDS",4)
344   return num
345 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.mc\_num\_of\_kids.)

## 3.2 Functions to insert the pdf literals

```
__tag_backend_create_emc_node This insert the emc node. We support also dvips and dvipdfmx backend
__tag_insert_emc_node
346 local __tag_backend_create_emc_node
347 if tex.outputmode == 0 then
348   if token.get_macro("c_sys_backend_str") == "dvipdfmx" then
349     function __tag_backend_create_emc_node ()
350       local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
351       emcnode.data = "pdf:code EMC"
352       return emcnode
353     end
354   else -- assume a dvips variant
355     function __tag_backend_create_emc_node ()
356       local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
357       emcnode.data = "ps:SDict begin mark /EMC pdfmark end"
358       return emcnode
359     end
360   end
361 else -- pdf mode
362   function __tag_backend_create_emc_node ()
363     local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
364     emcnode.data = "EMC"
365     emcnode.mode=1
366     return emcnode
367   end
368 end
369
370 local function __tag_insert_emc_node (head,current)
371   local emcnode= __tag_backend_create_emc_node()
372   head = node.insert_before(head,current,emcnode)
373   return head
374 end
```

(End of definition for `__tag_backend_create_emc_node` and `__tag_insert_emc_node`.)

```
__tag_backend_create_bmc_node This inserts a simple bmc node
__tag_insert_bmc_node
375 local __tag_backend_create_bmc_node
376 if tex.outputmode == 0 then
377   if token.get_macro("c_sys_backend_str") == "dvipdfmx" then
378     function __tag_backend_create_bmc_node (tag)
379       local bmcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
380       bmcnode.data = "pdf:code /"..tag.." BMC"
381       return bmcnode
382     end
383   else -- assume a dvips variant
384     function __tag_backend_create_bmc_node (tag)
385       local bmcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
386       bmcnode.data = "ps:SDict begin mark/"..tag.." /BMC pdfmark end"
387       return bmcnode
388     end
389   end
390 else -- pdf mode
391   function __tag_backend_create_bmc_node (tag)
392     local bmcnode = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
```

```

393     bmcnode.data = "/"..tag.." BMC"
394     bmcnode.mode=1
395     return bmcnode
396 end
397 end
398
399 local function __tag_insert_bmc_node (head,current,tag)
400 local bmcnode = __tag_backend_create_bmc_node (tag)
401 head = node.insert_before(head,current,bmcnode)
402 return head
403 end

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_backend\_create\_bmc\_node and \_\_tag\_insert\_bmc\_node.)

\_\_tag\_backend\_create\_bdc\_node  
\_\_tag\_insert\_bdc\_node

This inserts a bcd node with a fix dict. TODO: check if this is still used, now that we create properties.

```

404 local __tag_backend_create_bdc_node
405
406 if tex.outputmode == 0 then
407 if token.get_macro("c_sys_backend_str") == "dvipdfmx" then
408 function __tag_backend_create_bdc_node (tag,dict)
409 local bdcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
410 bdcnode.data = "pdf:code "/"..tag.."<<"..dict..">> BDC"
411 return bdcnode
412 end
413 else -- assume a dvips variant
414 function __tag_backend_create_bdc_node (tag,dict)
415 local bdcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
416 bdcnode.data = "ps:SDict begin mark/"..tag.."<<"..dict..">> /BDC pdfmark end"
417 return bdcnode
418 end
419 end
420 else -- pdf mode
421 function __tag_backend_create_bdc_node (tag,dict)
422 local bdcnode = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
423 bdcnode.data = "/"..tag.."<<"..dict..">> BDC"
424 bdcnode.mode=1
425 return bdcnode
426 end
427 end
428
429 local function __tag_insert_bdc_node (head,current,tag,dict)
430 bdcnode= __tag_backend_create_bdc_node (tag,dict)
431 head = node.insert_before(head,current,bdcnode)
432 return head
433 end

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_backend\_create\_bdc\_node and \_\_tag\_insert\_bdc\_node.)

\_\_tag\_pdf\_object\_ref

This allows to reference a pdf object reserved with the l3pdf command by name. The return value is n 0 R, if the object doesn't exist, n is 0.

```

434 local function __tag_pdf_object_ref (name,index)
435 local object
436 if ltx.pdf.object_id then

```

```

437     object = ltx.pdf.object_id (name,index) ..' 0 R'
438   else
439     local tokename = 'c__pdf_object_'..name..'/'..index..'_int'
440     object = token.create(tokename).mode ..' 0 R'
441   end
442   return object
443 end
444 ltx.__tag.func.pdf_object_ref = __tag_pdf_object_ref

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_pdf\_object\_ref.)

## 4 Function for the real space chars

`__tag_show_spacemark` A debugging function, it is used to inserts red color markers in the places where space chars can go, it can have side effects so not always reliable, but ok.

```

445 local function __tag_show_spacemark (head,current,color,height)
446   local markcolor = color or "1 0 0"
447   local markheight = height or 10
448   local pdfstring
449   if tex.outputmode == 0 then
450     -- ignore dvi mode for now
451   else
452     pdfstring = node.new("whatsit","pdf_literal")
453     pdfstring.data =
454       string.format("q " ..markcolor.." RG " ..markcolor.." rg 0.4 w 0 %g m 0 %g l S Q",-
3,markheight)
455     head = node.insert_after(head,current,pdfstring)
456   return head
457 end
458 end

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_show\_spacemark.)

`__tag_fakespace` This is used to define a lua version of `\pdf_fakespace`  
`ltx.__tag.func.fakespace`

```

459 local function __tag_fakespace()
460   tex.setattribute(iwspaceattributeid,1)
461   tex.setattribute(iwfontattributeid,font.current())
462 end
463 ltx.__tag.func.fakespace = __tag_fakespace

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_fakespace and ltx.\_\_tag.func.fakespace.)

`__tag_mark_spaces` a function to mark up places where real space chars should be inserted. It only sets attributes, these are then be used in a later traversing which inserts the actual spaces. When space handling is activated this function is inserted in some callbacks.

```

464 --[[ a function to mark up places where real space chars should be inserted
465     it only sets an attribute.
466 --]]
467
468 local function __tag_mark_spaces (head)
469   local inside_math = false
470   for n in nodetraverse(head) do
471     local id = n.id

```

```

472 if id == GLYPH then
473     local glyph = n
474     default_currfontid = glyph.font
475     if glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == GLUE)
476         and not inside_math and (glyph.next.width >0)
477     then
478         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
479         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
480     -- for debugging
481     if ltx.__tag.trace.showspace then
482         __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
483     end
484     elseif glyph.next and (glyph.next.id==KERN) and not inside_math then
485     local kern = glyph.next
486     if kern.next and (kern.next.id== GLUE) and (kern.next.width >0)
487     then
488         nodesetattribute(kern.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
489         nodesetattribute(kern.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
490     end
491     end
492     -- look also back
493     if glyph.prev and (glyph.prev.id == GLUE)
494         and not inside_math
495         and (glyph.prev.width >0)
496         and not nodehasattribute(glyph.prev,iwspaceattributeid)
497     then
498         nodesetattribute(glyph.prev,iwspaceattributeid,1)
499         nodesetattribute(glyph.prev,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
500     -- for debugging
501     if ltx.__tag.trace.showspace then
502         __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
503     end
504     end
505     elseif id == PENALTY then
506     local glyph = n
507     -- ltx.__tag.trace.log ("PENALTY " .. n.subtype .. "VALUE" .. n.penalty,3)
508     if glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == GLUE)
509         and not inside_math and (glyph.next.width >0) and n.subtype==0
510     then
511         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
512         -- changed 2024-01-18, issue #72
513         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwfontattributeid,default_currfontid)
514     -- for debugging
515     if ltx.__tag.trace.showspace then
516         __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
517     end
518     end
519     elseif id == MATH then
520     inside_math = (n.subtype == 0)
521     end
522 end
523 return head
524 end

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_mark\_spaces.)

```

__tag_activate_mark_space  These functions add/remove the function which marks the spaces to the callbacks
ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon pre_linebreak_filter and hpack_filter
ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff
525 local function __tag_activate_mark_space ()
526   if not luatexbase.in_callback ("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces") then
527     luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_linebreak_filter",__tag_mark_spaces,"markspaces")
528     luatexbase.add_to_callback("hpack_filter",__tag_mark_spaces,"markspaces")
529   end
530 end
531
532 ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon=__tag_activate_mark_space
533
534 local function __tag_deactivate_mark_space ()
535   if luatexbase.in_callback ("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces") then
536     luatexbase.remove_from_callback("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces")
537     luatexbase.remove_from_callback("hpack_filter","markspaces")
538   end
539 end
540
541 ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff=__tag_deactivate_mark_space

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_activate\_mark\_space, ltx.\_\_tag.func.markspaceon, and ltx.\_\_tag.func.markspaceoff.)

We need two local variable to setup a default space char.

```

542 local default_space_char = nodenew(GLYPH)
543 local default_fontid      = fontid("TU/lmr/m/n/10")
544 local default_currfontid = fontid("TU/lmr/m/n/10")
545 default_space_char.char   = 32
546 default_space_char.font   = default_fontid

```

And a function to check as best as possible if a font has a space:

```

547 local function __tag_font_has_space (fontid)
548   t= fonts.hashes.identifiers[fontid]
549   if luaotfload.aux.slot_of_name(fontid,"space")
550     or t.characters and t.characters[32] and t.characters[32]["unicode"]==32
551   then
552     return true
553   else
554     return false
555   end
556 end

```

```

__tag_space_chars_shipout  These is the main function to insert real space chars. It inserts a glyph before every glue
ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout which has been marked previously. The attributes are copied from the glue, so if the
tagging is done later, it will be tagged like it.

```

```

557 local function __tag_space_chars_shipout (box)
558   local head = box.head
559   if head then
560     for n in node.traverse(head) do
561       local spaceattr = -1
562       if not nodehasattribute(n,iwspaceOffattributeid) then
563         spaceattr = nodegetattribute(n,iwspaceattributeid) or -1
564       end
565       if n.id == HLIST then -- enter the hlist
566         __tag_space_chars_shipout (n)
567       elseif n.id == VLIST then -- enter the vlist

```



```

568     __tag_space_chars_shipout (n)
569 elseif n.id == GLUE then
570     if ltx.__tag.trace.showspace and spaceattr==1 then
571         __tag_show_spacemark (head,n,"0 1 0")
572     end
573     if spaceattr==1 then
574         local space
575         local space_char = node.copy(default_space_char)
576         local curfont = nodegetattribute(n,iwfontattributeid)
577         ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO SPACE-FUNCTION-FONT: ".. tostring(curfont),3)
578         if curfont and
579             -- luaotfload.aux.slot_of_name(curfont,"space")
580             __tag_font_has_space (curfont)
581         then
582             space_char.font=curfont
583         end
584         head, space = node.insert_before(head, n, space_char) --
585         n.width = n.width - space.width
586         space.attr = n.attr
587     end
588 end
589 end
590 box.head = head
591 end
592 end
593
594 function ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout (box)
595     __tag_space_chars_shipout (box)
596 end

```

(End of definition for `__tag_space_chars_shipout` and `ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout`.)

## 5 Function for the tagging

`ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids`

This is the main function to insert the K entry into a StructElem object. It is used in `tagpdf-mc-luacode` module. The `single` attribute allows to handle the case that a single mc on the tex side can have more than one kid after the processing here, and so we get the correct array/non array setup.

```

597 function ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (mcnum,single)
598     if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] then
599         ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID-TEST: " .. mcnum,4)
600         if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] then
601             if #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] > 1 and single==1 then
602                 tex.sprint("[")
603             end
604             for i,kidstable in ipairs( ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] ) do
605                 local kidnum = kidstable["kid"]
606                 local kidpage = kidstable["page"]
607                 local kidpageobjnum = pdfpageref(kidpage)
608                 ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID: " .. mcnum ..
609                     " insert KID " .. i ..
610                     " with num " .. kidnum ..
611                     " on page " .. kidpage.."/"..kidpageobjnum,3)

```

```

612     tex.sprint(catlatex,"<</Type /MCR /Pg "..kidpageobjnum .. " 0 R /MCID "..kidnum.. ">> "
613     end
614     if #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] > 1 and single==1 then
615         tex.sprint("")
616     end
617 else
618     -- this is typically not a problem, e.g. empty hbox in footer/header can
619     -- trigger this warning.
620     ltx.__tag.trace.log("WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-NO-KIDS: "..mcnum.." has no kids",2)
621     if single==1 then
622         tex.sprint("null")
623     end
624 end
625 else
626     ltx.__tag.trace.log("WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-MISSING: "..mcnum.." doesn't exist",0)
627 end
628 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.mc\_insert\_kids.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_struct\_mcabs

This function is used in the tagpdf-mc-luacode. It store the absolute count of the mc into the current structure. This must be done ordered.

```

629 function ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs (structnum,mcnum)
630     ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]=ltx.__tag.struct[structnum] or { }
631     ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"]=ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"] or { }
632     -- a structure can contain more than on mc chunk, the content should be ordered
633     tableinsert(ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"],mcnum)
634     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INTO-STRUCT: "..
635         mcnum.." inserted in struct "..structnum,3)
636     -- but every mc can only be in one structure
637     ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]= ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] or { }
638     ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"] = structnum
639 end
640

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_struct\_mcabs.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_in\_page

This is used in the traversing code and stores the relation between abs count and page count.

```

641 -- pay attention: lua counts arrays from 1, tex pages from one
642 -- mcid and arrays in pdf count from 0.
643 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page (mcnum,mcpagecnt,page)
644     ltx.__tag.page[page] = ltx.__tag.page[page] or {}
645     ltx.__tag.page[page][mcpagecnt] = mcnum
646     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MC-INTO-PAGE: page " .. page ..
647         ": inserting MCID " .. mcpagecnt .. " => " .. mcnum,3)
648 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_in\_page.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.update\_mc\_attributes

This updates the mc-attributes of a box. It should only be used on boxes which don't contain structure elements. The arguments are a box, the mc-num and the type (as a number)

```

649 local function __tag_update_mc_attributes (head,mcnum,type)

```

```

650 for n in node.traverse(head) do
651     node.set_attribute(n,mcntattributeid,mcnum)
652     node.set_attribute(n,mctypeattributeid,type)
653     if n.id == HLIST or n.id == VLIST then
654         __tag_update_mc_attributes (n.list,mcnum,type)
655     end
656 end
657 return head
658 end
659 ltx.__tag.func.update_mc_attributes = __tag_update_mc_attributes

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.update\_mc\_attributes.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.mark\_page\_elements

This is the main traversing function. See the lua comment for more details.

```

660 --[[
661     Now follows the core function
662     It wades through the shipout box and checks the attributes
663     ARGUMENTS
664     box: is a box,
665     mcpagecnt: num, the current page cnt of mc (should start at -1 in shipout box), needed for
666     mcntprev: num, the attribute cnt of the previous node/whatever - if different we have a
667     mcopen: num, records if some bdc/emc is open
668     These arguments are only needed for log messages, if not present are replaced by fix strings
669     name: string to describe the box
670     mctypeprev: num, the type attribute of the previous node/whatever
671
672     there are lots of logging messages currently. Should be cleaned up in due course.
673     One should also find ways to make the function shorter.
674 --]]
675
676 function ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (box,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mcopen,name,mctypeprev)
677     local name = name or ("SOMEBOX")
678     local mctypeprev = mctypeprev or -1
679     local abspage = status.total_pages + 1 -- the real counter is increased
680                                           -- inside the box so one off
681                                           -- if the callback is not used. (???)
682     ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ABSPAGE: " .. abspage,3)
683     ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ARGS: pagecnt".. mcpagecnt..
684                         " prev "..mcntprev ..
685                         " type prev "..mctypeprev,4)
686     ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-TRAVERSING-BOX: ".. tostring(name)..
687                         " TYPE ".. node.type(node.getid(box)),3)
688     local head = box.head -- ShipoutBox is a vlist?
689     if head then
690         mcntthead, mctypehead,taghead = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (head)
691         ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-HEAD: " ..
692                             node.type(node.getid(head))..
693                             " MC"..tostring(mcntthead)..
694                             " => TAG " .. tostring(mctypehead)..
695                             " => ".. tostring(taghead),3)
696     else
697         ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NO-HEAD: head is "..
698                             tostring(head),3)
699     end

```

```

700 for n in node.traverse(head) do
701   local mcnt, mctype, tag = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (n)
702   local spaceattr = nodegetattribute(n,iwspaceattributeid) or -1
703   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NODE: "..
704                       node.type(node.getid(n))..
705                       " MC".. tostring(mcnt)..
706                       " => TAG ".. tostring(mctype)..
707                       " => " .. tostring(tag),3)
708   if n.id == HLIST
709   then -- enter the hlist
710     mcopen,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mctypeprev=
711     ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (n,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mcopen,"INTERNAL HLIST",mctype)
712   elseif n.id == VLIST then -- enter the vlist
713     mcopen,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mctypeprev=
714     ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (n,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mcopen,"INTERNAL VLIST",mctype)
715   elseif n.id == GLUE and not n.leader then -- at glue real space chars are inserted, but t
716                                           -- been done if the previous shipout wandering, so here it
717   elseif n.id == LOCAL_PAR then -- local_par is ignored
718   elseif n.id == PENALTY then -- penalty is ignored
719   elseif n.id == KERN then -- kern is ignored
720     ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-KERN-SUBTYPE: "..
721                         node.type(node.getid(n)).." ".n.subtype,4)
722   else
723     -- math is currently only logged.
724     -- we could mark the whole as math
725     -- for inner processing the mlist_to_hlist callback is probably needed.
726     if n.id == MATH then
727       ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MATH-SUBTYPE: "..
728                           node.type(node.getid(n)).." "..__tag_get_mathsubtype(n),4)
729     end
730     -- endmath
731     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MC-COMPARE: current "..
732                         mcnt.." prev "..mcntprev,4)
733     if mcnt~=mcntprev then -- a new mc chunk
734       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NEW-MC-NODE: "..
735                           node.type(node.getid(n))..
736                           " MC"..tostring(mcnt)..
737                           " <=> PREVIOUS "..tostring(mcntprev),4)
738     if mcopen~=0 then -- there is a chunk open, close it (hope there is only one ...
739       box.list=__tag_insert_emc_node (box.list,n)
740       mcopen = mcopen - 1
741       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-INSERT-EMC: " ..
742                           mcpagecnt .. " MCOPEN = " .. mcopen,3)
743     if mcopen ~=0 then
744       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("WARN TAG-OPEN-MC: " .. mcopen,1)
745     end
746   end
747   if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt] then
748     if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt]["artifact"] then
749       ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-INSERT-ARTIFACT: "..
750                           tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt]["artifact"]),3)
751     if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt]["artifact"] == "" then
752       box.list = __tag_insert_bmc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact")
753     else

```

```

754     box.list = __tag_insert_bdc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact", "/Type /"..ltx.__tag.mc[mc
755     end
756 else
757 ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-INSERT-TAG: "..
758     tostring(tag),3)
759 mcpagecnt = mcpagecnt +1
760 ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-INSERT-BDC: "..mcpagecnt,3)
761 local dict= "/MCID "..mcpagecnt
762 if ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["raw"] then
763     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-RAW: "..
764         tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["raw"]),3)
765     dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["raw"]
766 end
767 if ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["alt"] then
768     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-ALT: "..
769         tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["alt"]),3)
770     dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["alt"]
771 end
772 if ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["actualtext"] then
773     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-ACTUALTEXT: "..
774         tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["actualtext"]),3)
775     dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mcncnt]["actualtext"]
776 end
777 box.list = __tag_insert_bdc_node (box.list,n,tag, dict)
778 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcncnt,mcpagecnt,abspage)
779 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page(mcncnt,mcpagecnt,abspage)
780 ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (mcncnt,3)
781 end
782 mcopen = mcopen + 1
783 else
784 if tagunmarkedbool.mode == truebool.mode then
785     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-NOT-TAGGED: this has not been tagged, using artifact",2)
786     box.list = __tag_insert_bmc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact")
787     mcopen = mcopen + 1
788 else
789     ltx.__tag.trace.log("WARN TAG-NOT-TAGGED: this has not been tagged",1)
790 end
791 end
792 mcncntprev = mcncnt
793 end
794 end -- end if
795 end -- end for
796 if head then
797     mcncnthead, mctypehead,taghead = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (head)
798     ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ENDHEAD: " ..
799         node.type(node.getid(head))..
800         " MC"..tostring(mcncnthead)..
801         " => TAG "..tostring(mctypehead)..
802         " => "..tostring(taghead),4)
803 else
804     ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ENDHEAD: ".. tostring(head),4)
805 end
806 ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-QUITTING-BOX "..
807     tostring(name)..

```

```

808             " TYPE ".. node.type(node.getid(box)),4)
809     return mcopen,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mctypeprev
810 end
811

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.mark\_page\_elements.)

ltx.\_\_tag.func.mark\_shipout

This is the function used in the callback. Beside calling the traversing function it also checks if there is an open MC-chunk from a page break and insert the needed EMC literal.

```

812 function ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (box)
813     mcopen = ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (box,-1,-100,0,"Shipout",-1)
814     if mcopen~=0 then -- there is a chunk open, close it (hope there is only one ...
815         local emcnode = __tag_backend_create_emc_node ()
816         local list = box.list
817         if list then
818             list = node.insert_after (list,node.tail(list),emcnode)
819             mcopen = mcopen - 1
820             ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO SHIPOUT-INSERT-LAST-EMC: MCOOPEN " .. mcopen,3)
821         else
822             ltx.__tag.trace.log ("WARN SHIPOUT-UPS: this shouldn't happen",0)
823         end
824         if mcopen ~=0 then
825             ltx.__tag.trace.log ("WARN SHIPOUT-MC-OPEN: " .. mcopen,1)
826         end
827     end
828 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.mark\_shipout.)

## 6 Parenttree

ltx.\_\_tag.func.fill\_parent\_tree\_line

ltx.\_\_tag.func.output\_parenttree

These functions create the parent tree. The second, main function is used in the tagpdf-tree code. TODO check if the tree code can move into the backend code.

```

829 function ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (page)
830     -- we need to get page-> i=kid -> mcnum -> structnum
831     -- pay attention: the kid numbers and the page number in the parent tree start with 0!
832     local numsentry = ""
833     local pdfpage = page-1
834     if ltx.__tag.page[page] and ltx.__tag.page[page][0] then
835         mcchunks=#ltx.__tag.page[page]
836         ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUM: page "..
837             page.." has "..mcchunks.." +1 Elements ",4)
838         for i=0,mcchunks do
839             -- what does this log??
840             ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-CHUNKS: "..
841                 ltx.__tag.page[page][i],4)
842         end
843         if mcchunks == 0 then
844             -- only one chunk so no need for an array
845             local mcnum = ltx.__tag.page[page][0]
846             local structnum = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"]
847             local propname = "g__tag_struct_"..structnum.."_prop"

```

```

848     --local objref = ltx.__tag.tables[proprname]["objref"] or "XXXX"
849     local objref = __tag_pdf_object_ref('__tag/struct',structnum)
850     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-STRUCT-OBJREF: =====>"..
851         tostring(objref),5)
852     numsentry = pdfpage .. " [".. objref .. "]"
853     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY: page " ..
854         page.. " num entry = ".. numsentry,3)
855     else
856         numsentry = pdfpage .. " ["
857         for i=0,mcchunks do
858             local mcnum = ltx.__tag.page[page][i]
859             local structnum = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"] or 0
860             local proprname = "g__tag_struct_"..structnum.."__prop"
861             --local objref = ltx.__tag.tables[proprname]["objref"] or "XXXX"
862             local objref = __tag_pdf_object_ref('__tag/struct',structnum)
863             numsentry = numsentry .. " " .. objref
864         end
865         numsentry = numsentry .. "]" "
866         ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY: page " ..
867             page.. " num entry = ".. numsentry,3)
868     end
869     else
870         ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO PARENTTREE-NO-DATA: page "..page,3)
871         numsentry = pdfpage.." []"
872     end
873     return numsentry
874 end
875
876 function ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree (abspage)
877     for i=1,abspage do
878         line = ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (i) .. "^^J"
879         tex.sprint(catlatex,line)
880     end
881 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.fill\_parent\_tree\_line and ltx.\_\_tag.func.output\_parenttree.)

s\_softhyphen\_pre process\_softhyphen\_post First some local definitions. Since these are only needed locally everything gets wrapped into a block.

```

882 do
883     local properties = node.get_properties_table()
884     local is_soft_hyphen_prop = 'tagpdf.rewrite-softhyphen.is_soft_hyphen'
885     local hyphen_char = 0x2D
886     local soft_hyphen_char = 0xAD
887
888     A lookup table to test if the font supports the soft hyphen glyph.
889     local softhyphen_fonts = setmetatable({}, {__index = function(t, fid)
890         local fdir = identifiers[fid]
891         local format = fdir and fdir.format
892         local result = (format == 'opentype' or format == 'truetype')
893         local characters = fdir and fdir.characters
894         result = result and (characters and characters[soft_hyphen_char]) ~= nil
895         t[fid] = result
896         return result
897     end})

```

A pre shaping callback to mark hyphens as being hyphenation hyphens. This runs before shaping to avoid affecting hyphens moved into discretionaries during shaping.

```

896 local function process_softthyphen_pre(head, _context, _dir)
897   if softthyphenbool.mode ~= truebool.mode then return true end
898   for disc, sub in node.traverse_id(DISC, head) do
899     if sub == explicit_disc or sub == regular_disc then
900       for n, _ch, _f in node.traverse_char(disc.pre) do
901         local props = properties[n]
902         if not props then
903           props = {}
904           properties[n] = props
905         end
906         props[is_soft_hyphen_prop] = true
907       end
908     end
909   end
910   return true
911 end
912

```

Finally do the actual replacement after shaping. No checking for double processing here since the operation is idempotent.

```

913 local function process_softthyphen_post(head, _context, _dir)
914   if softthyphenbool.mode ~= truebool.mode then return true end
915   for disc, sub in node.traverse_id(DISC, head) do
916     for n, ch, fid in node.traverse_glyph(disc.pre) do
917       local props = properties[n]
918       if softthyphen_fonts[fid] and ch == hyphen_char and props and props[is_soft_hyphen_prop] then
919         n.char = soft_hyphen_char
920         props.glyph_info = nil
921       end
922     end
923   end
924   return true
925 end
926
927 luatexbase.add_to_callback('pre_shaping_filter', process_softthyphen_pre, 'tagpdf.rewrite-
softthyphen')
928 luatexbase.add_to_callback('post_shaping_filter', process_softthyphen_post, 'tagpdf.rewrite-
softthyphen')
929 end

```

(End of definition for `process_softthyphen_pre` `process_softthyphen_post`. This function is documented on page ??.)

```

930 </lua>

```



## Part X

# The `tagpdf-roles` module

## Tags, roles and namespace code

### Part of the `tagpdf` package

---

`add-new-tag` (setup-key)  
`tag` (rolemap-key)  
`namespace` (rolemap-key)  
`role` (rolemap-key)  
`role-namespace` (rolemap-key)

---

The `add-new-tag` key can be used in `\tagpdfsetup` to declare and rolemap new tags. It takes as value a key-value list or a simple `new-tag/old-tag`.

The key-value list knows the following keys:

**tag** This is the name of the new tag as it should then be used in `\tagstructbegin`.

**namespace** This is the namespace of the new tag. The value should be a shorthand of a namespace. The allowed values are currently `pdf`, `pdf2`, `mathml`, `latex`, `latex-book` and `user`. The default value (and recommended value for a new tag) is `user`. The public name of the user namespace is `tag/NS/user`. This can be used to reference the namespace e.g. in attributes.

**role** This is the tag the tag should be mapped too. In a PDF 1.7 or earlier this is normally a tag from the `pdf` set, in PDF 2.0 from the `pdf`, `pdf2` and `mathml` set. It can also be a user tag. The tag must be declared before, as the code retrieves the class of the new tag from it. The PDF format allows mapping to be done transitively. But `tagpdf` can't/won't check such unusual role mapping.

**role-namespace** If the role is a known tag the default value is the default namespace of this tag. With this key a specific namespace can be forced.

Namespaces are mostly a PDF 2.0 property, but it doesn't harm to set them also in a PDF 1.7 or earlier.

---

`\tag_check_child:nnTF` `\tag_check_child:nn{<tag>}{<namespace>} {<true code>} {<false code>}`

---

This checks if the tag `<tag>` from the name space `<namespace>` can be used at the current position. In `tagpdf-base` it is always true.

```
1 <@=<tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-roles-code} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to roles and structure names}
5 </header>
```

## 1 Code related to roles and structure names

## 1.1 Variables

Tags are used in structures (`\tagstructbegin`) and mc-chunks (`\tagmcbegin`).

They have a name (a string), in lua a number (for the lua attribute), and in PDF 2.0 belong to one or more name spaces, with one being the default name space.

Tags of structures are classified, e.g. as grouping, inline or block level structure (and a few special classes like lists and tables), and must follow containments rules depending on their classification (for example a inline structure can not contain a block level structure). New tags inherit their classification from their rolemapping to the standard namespaces (`pdf` and/or `pdf2`). We store this classification as it will probably be needed for tests but currently the data is not much used. The classification for math (and the containment rules) is unclear currently and so not set.

The attribute number is only relevant in lua and only for the MC chunks (so tags with the same name from different names spaces can have the same number), and so only stored if luatex is detected.

Due to the namespaces the storing and processing of tags and there data are different in various places for PDF 2.0 and PDF <2.0, which makes things a bit difficult and leads to some duplications. Perhaps at some time there should be a clear split.

This are the main variables used by the code:

`\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop` This is the core list of tag names. It uses tags as keys and the shorthand (e.g. `pdf2`, or `mathml`) of the default name space as value.

In pdf 2.0 the value is needed in the structure dictionaries.

`\g__tag_role_tags_class_prop` This contains for each tag a classification type. It is used in pdf <2.0.

`\g__tag_role_NS_prop` This contains the names spaces. The values are the object references. They are used in pdf 2.0.

`\g__tag_role_rolemap_prop` This contains for each tag the role to a standard tag. It is used in pdf<2.0 for tag checking and to fill at the end the RoleMap dictionary.

`g_@@_role/RoleMap_dict` This dictionary contains the standard rolemaps. It is relevant only for pdf <2.0.

`\g__tag_role_NS_<ns>_prop` This prop contains the tags of a name space and their role. The props are also use for remapping. As value they contain two brace groups: tag and namespace. In pdf <2.0 the namespace is empty.

`\g__tag_role_NS_<ns>_class_prop` This prop contains the tags of a name space and their type. The value is only needed for pdf 2.0.

`\g__tag_role_index_prop` This prop contains the standard tags (`pdf` in pdf<2.0, `pdf, pdf2 + mathml` in pdf 2.0) as keys, the values are a two-digit number. These numbers are used to get the containment rule of two tags from the intarray.

`\l__tag_role_debug_prop` This property is used to pass some info around for info messages or debugging.

`\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop` This is the core list of tag names. It uses tags as keys and the shorthand (e.g. pdf2, or mathml) of the default name space as value. We store the default name space also in pdf <2.0, even if not needed: it doesn't harm and simplifies the code. There is no need to access this from lua, so we use the standard prop commands.

```
7 \prop_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop`.)

`\g__tag_role_tags_class_prop` With pdf 2.0 we store the class in the NS dependent props. With pdf <2.0 we store for now the type(s) of a tag in a common prop. Tags that are rolemapped should get the type from the target.

```
8 \prop_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_role_tags_class_prop`.)

`\g__tag_role_NS_prop` This holds the list of supported name spaces. The keys are the name tagpdf will use, the values the object reference. The urls identifier are stored in related dict object.

**mathml** <http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML>

**pdf2** <http://iso.org/pdf/ssn>

**pdf** <http://iso.org/pdf/ssn> (default)

**user** `\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str` (random id, for user tags)

**latex** <https://www.latex-project.org/ns/dflt/2022>

**latex-book** <https://www.latex-project.org/ns/book/2022>

More namespaces are possible and their objects references and their rolemaps must be collected so that an array can be written to the StructTreeRoot at the end (see tagpdf-tree). We use a prop to store the object reference as it will be needed rather often.

```
9 \prop_new:N \g__tag_role_NS_prop
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_role_NS_prop`.)

`\g__tag_role_index_prop` This prop contains the standard tags (pdf in pdf<2.0, pdf, pdf2 + mathml in pdf 2.0) as keys, the values are a two-digit number. These numbers are used to get the containment rule of two tags from the intarray.

```
10 \prop_new:N \g__tag_role_index_prop
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_role_index_prop`.)

`\l__tag_role_debug_prop` This variable is used to pass more infos to debug messages.

```
11 \prop_new:N \l__tag_role_debug_prop
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_role_debug_prop`.)

We need also a bunch of temporary variables.

```
\l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
```

```
\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
```

```
12 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
```

```
\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_tl %
```

```
13 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
```

```
\l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
```

```
14 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_tl
```

```
\l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
```

```
15 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
```

```
\l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
```

```
16 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
```

```
\l__tag_role_tmpa_seq
```

```
17 \seq_new:N \l__tag_role_tmpa_seq
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl` and others.)

## 1.2 Namespaces

The following commands setups a name space. With pdf version <2.0 this is only a prop with the rolemap. With pdf 2.0 a dictionary must be set up. Such a name space dictionaries can contain an optional /Schema and /RoleMapNS entry. We only reserve the objects but delay the writing to the finish code, where we can test if the keys and the name spaces are actually needed. This commands setups objects for the name space and its rolemap. It also initialize a dict to collect the rolemaps if needed, and a property with the tags of the name space and their rolemapping for loops. It is unclear if a reference to a schema file will be ever needed, but it doesn't harm ....

`g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict` This is the object which contains the normal RoleMap. It is probably not needed in pdf  
`\g__tag_role_rolemap_prop` 2.0 but currently kept.

```
18 \pdfdict_new:n {g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
19 \prop_new:N \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop
```

(End of definition for `g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict` and `\g__tag_role_rolemap_prop`.)

---

```
\__tag_role_NS_new:nnn \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn{<shorthand>}{<URI-ID>}Schema
```

```
\__tag_role_NS_new:nnn
```

```
20 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
21 {
22   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn #1 #2 #3
23   {
24     \prop_new:c { g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop }
25     \prop_new:c { g__tag_role_NS_#1_class_prop }
26     \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_role_NS_prop {#1}{#}
27   }
28 }
29 {
30   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn #1 #2 #3
31   {
32     \prop_new:c { g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop }
33     \prop_new:c { g__tag_role_NS_#1_class_prop }
34     \pdf_object_new:n {tag/NS/#1}
35     \pdfdict_new:n {g__tag_role/namespace_#1_dict}
36     \pdf_object_new:n {__tag/RoleMapNS/#1}
37     \pdfdict_new:n {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_#1_dict}
38     \pdfdict_gput:nnn
39       {g__tag_role/namespace_#1_dict}
40       {Type}
41       {/Namespace}
42     \pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN{utf8/string}{#2}\l__tag_tmpa_str
43     \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_str
44     {
45       \pdfdict_gput:nne
46         {g__tag_role/namespace_#1_dict}
47         {NS}
48         {\l__tag_tmpa_str}
49     }
50     %RoleMapNS is added in tree
51     \tl_if_empty:NF {#3}
```

```

52     {
53       \pdfdict_gput:nne{g__tag_role/namespace_#1_dict}
54       {Schema}{#3}
55     }
56     \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_role_NS_prop {#1}{\pdf_object_ref:n{tag/NS/#1~}}
57   }
58 }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_role_NS_new:nnn`.)

We need an id for the user space. For the tests it should be possible to set it to a fix value. So we use random numbers which can be fixed by setting a seed. We fake a sort of GUID but do not try to be really exact as it doesn't matter ...

`\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str`

```

59 \str_const:Ne \c__tag_role_userNS_id_str
60   { data:,
61     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
62     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
63     -
64     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
65     -
66     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
67     -
68     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
69     -
70     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {16777215}}
71     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {16777215}}
72   }

```

(End of definition for `\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str`.)

Now we setup the standard names spaces. The mathml space is loaded also for pdf < 2.0 but not added to RoleMap unless a boolean is set to true with `tagpdf-setup{mathml-tags}`.

```

73 \bool_new:N \g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool
74 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {pdf} {http://iso.org/pdf/ssn}{}
75 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {pdf2} {http://iso.org/pdf2/ssn}{}
76 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {mathml} {http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML}{}
77 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {latex} {https://www.latex-project.org/ns/dfl/2022}{}
78 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {latex-book} {https://www.latex-project.org/ns/book/2022}{}
79 \exp_args:Nne
80   \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {user}{\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str}{}

```

### 1.3 Adding a new tag

Both when reading the files and when setting up a tag manually we have to store data in various places.

`\__tag_role_alloctag:nnn`

This command allocates a new tag without role mapping. In the lua backend it will also record the attribute value.

```

81 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
82   {
83     \sys_if_engine luatex:TF
84     {

```

```

85     \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 tagname, ns, type
86     {
87       \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.alloctag ('#1') }
88       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
89       \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}{{}}
90       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#1}{#3}
91       \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_class_prop} {#1}{--UNUSED--}
92     }
93   }
94   {
95     \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn #1 #2 #3
96     {
97       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
98       \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}{{}}
99       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#1}{#3}
100      \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_class_prop} {#1}{--UNUSED--}
101    }
102  }
103 }
104 {
105   \sys_if_engine luatex:TF
106   {
107     \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 tagname, ns, type
108     {
109       \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.alloctag ('#1') }
110       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
111       \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}{{}}
112       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#1}{--UNUSED--}
113       \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_class_prop} {#1}{#3}
114     }
115   }
116   {
117     \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn #1 #2 #3
118     {
119       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
120       \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}{{}}
121       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#1}{--UNUSED--}
122       \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_class_prop} {#1}{#3}
123     }
124   }
125 }
126 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn {nnV}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_alloctag:nnn.)

### 1.3.1 pdf 1.7 and earlier

\\_\_tag\_role\_add\_tag:nn The pdf 1.7 version has only two arguments: new and rolemap name. The role must be an existing tag and should not be empty. We allow to change the role of an existing tag: as the rolemap is written at the end not confusion can happen.

```

127 \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nn % (new) name, reference to old
128   {
checks and messages

```

```

129 \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn {#1}{#2}
130 \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}
131 {
132   \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
133   {
134     \msg_info:nnn { tag }{new-tag}{#1}
135   }
136 }

```

now the addition

```

137 \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#2}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
138 \quark_if_no_value:NT \l__tag_tmpa_tl
139 {
140   \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--}
141 }
142 \__tag_role_alloctag:nnV {#1}{user}\l__tag_tmpa_tl

```

We resolve rolemapping recursively so that all targets are stored as standard tags.

```

143 \tl_if_empty:nF { #2 }
144 {
145   \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#2}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
146   \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
147   {
148     \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}{\tl_to_str:n{#2}}
149   }
150   {
151     \prop_gput:NnV \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
152   }
153 }
154 }
155 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nn {VV,ne}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_add\_tag:nn.)

For the parent-child test we must be able to get the role. We use the same number of arguments as for the 2.0 command. If there is no role, we assume a standard tag.

\\_\_tag\_role\_get:nnNN

```

156 \pdf_version_compare:NnT < {2.0}
157 {
158   \cs_new:Npn \__tag_role_get:nnNN #1#2#3#4 %#1 tag, #2 NS, #3 tlvar which hold the role tag
159   {
160     \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}#3
161     {
162       \tl_set:Nn #3 {#1}
163     }
164     \tl_set:Nn #4 {}
165   }
166   \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_get:nnNN {VVNN}
167 }
168

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_get:nnNN.)

### 1.3.2 The pdf 2.0 version

`__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn` The pdf 2.0 version takes four arguments: tag/namespace/role/namespace

```
169 \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn %tag/namespace/role/namespace
170 {
171   \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nnn {#1/#2}{#3}{#4}
172   \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
173   {
174     \msg_info:nnn { tag }{new-tag}{#1}
175   }
176   \prop_if_exist:cTF
177   { g__tag_role_NS_#4_class_prop }
178   {
179     \prop_get:cnN { g__tag_role_NS_#4_class_prop } {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
180     \quark_if_no_value:NT \l__tag_tmpa_tl
181     {
182       \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--}
183     }
184   }
185   { \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--} }
186   \__tag_role_alloctag:nnV {#1}{#2}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
```

Do not remap standard tags. TODO add warning?

```
187   \tl_if_in:nnF {-pdf-pdf2-mathml-}{-#2-}
188   {
189     \pdfdict_gput:nne {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_#2_dict}{#1}
190     {
191       [
192         \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#3}
193         \c_space_tl
194         \pdf_object_ref:n {tag/NS/#4}
195       ]
196     }
197   }
```

We resolve rolemapping recursively so that all targets are stored as standard tags for the tests.

```
198   \tl_if_empty:nF { #2 }
199   {
200     \prop_get:cnN { g__tag_role_NS_#4_prop } {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
201     \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
202     {
203       \prop_gput:cne { g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop } {#1}
204       {{\tl_to_str:n{#3}}{\tl_to_str:n{#4}}}
205     }
206     {
207       \prop_gput:cno { g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop } {#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
208     }
209   }
```

We also store into the pdf 1.7 rolemapping so that we can add that as fallback for pdf 1.7 processor

```
210   \bool_if:NT \l__tag_role_update_bool
211   {
212     \tl_if_empty:nF { #3 }
```



```

213     {
214       \tl_if_eq:nnF{#1}{#3}
215       {
216         \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
217         \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
218         {
219           \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}{\tl_to_str:n{#3}}
220         }
221         {
222           \prop_gput:NnV \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
223         }
224       }
225     }
226   }
227 }
228 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn {VVVV}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_add\_tag:nnnn.)

For the parent-child test we must be able to get the role. We use the same number of arguments as for the <2.0 command (and assume that we don't need a name space)

\\_\_tag\_role\_get:nnNN

```

229 \pdf_version_compare:NnF < {2.0}
230 {
231   \cs_new:Npn \__tag_role_get:nnNN #1#2#3#4
232     % #1 tag, #2 NS,
233     % #3 tlvar which hold the role tag
234     % #4 tlvar which hold the name of the target NS
235   {
236     \prop_if_exist:cTF {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop}
237     {
238       \prop_get:cnNTF {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}\l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
239       {
240         \tl_set:Ne #3 {\exp_last_unbraced:NV\use_i:nn \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl}
241         \tl_set:Ne #4 {\exp_last_unbraced:NV\use_ii:nn \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl}
242       }
243       {
244         \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-tag} { #1 }
245         \tl_set:Nn #3 {#1}
246         \tl_set:Nn #4 {#2}
247       }
248     }
249     {
250       \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-NS} { #2 }
251       \tl_set:Nn #3 {#1}
252       \tl_set:Nn #4 {#2}
253     }
254   }
255   \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_get:nnNN {VVNN}
256 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_get:nnNN.)

## 1.4 Helper command to read the data from files

In this section we setup the helper command to read namespace files.

```

257 \bool_new:N\l__tag_role_update_bool
258 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_role_update_bool
259 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
260 {
261   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_read_namespace_line:nw #1#2,#3,#4,#5,#6\q_stop %
262   % #1 NS, #2 tag, #3 rolemap, #4 NS rolemap #5 type
263   {
264     \tl_if_empty:nF { #2 }
265     {
266       \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_role_update_bool
267       {
268         \tl_if_empty:nTF {#5}
269         {
270           \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
271           \quark_if_no_value:NT \l__tag_tmpa_tl
272           {
273             \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--}
274           }
275         }
276         {
277           \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#5}
278         }
279         \__tag_role_alloctag:nnV {#2}{#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
280         \tl_if_eq:nnF {#2}{#3}
281         {
282           \__tag_role_add_tag:nn {#2}{#3}
283         }
284         \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop} {#2}{#{#3}{}}
285       }
286       {
287         \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop} {#2}{#{#3}{}}
288         \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#1_class_prop} {#2}{--UNUSED--}
289       }
290     }
291   }
292 }
293 {
294   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_read_namespace_line:nw #1#2,#3,#4,#5,#6\q_stop %
295   % #1 NS, #2 tag, #3 rolemap, #4 NS rolemap #5 type
296   {
297     \tl_if_empty:nF {#2}
298     {
299       \tl_if_empty:nTF {#5}
300       {
301         \prop_get:cnN { g__tag_role_NS_#4_class_prop } {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
302         \quark_if_no_value:NT \l__tag_tmpa_tl

```

```

303         {
304         \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--}
305         }
306     }
307     {
308     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#5}
309     }
310     \__tag_role_alloctag:nnV {#2}{#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
311     \bool_lazy_and:nnT
312     { ! \tl_if_empty_p:n {#3} }{! \str_if_eq_p:nn {#1}{pdf2}}
313     {
314     \__tag_role_add_tag:nxxx {#2}{#1}{#3}{#4}
315     }
316     \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop} {#2}{#3}{#4}
317 }
318 }
319 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_read\_namespace\_line:nw.)

\\_\_tag\_role\_read\_namespace:nn

This command reads a namespace file in the format tagpdf-ns-XX.def

```

320 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_read_namespace:nn #1 #2 %name of namespace #2 name of file
321 {
322     \prop_if_exist:cF {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop}
323     { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{namespace-unknown}{#1} }
324     \file_if_exist:nTF { tagpdf-ns-#2.def }
325     {
326     \ior_open:Nn \g_tmpa_ior {tagpdf-ns-#2.def}
327     \msg_info:nnn {tag}{read-namespace}{#2}
328     \ior_map_inline:Nn \g_tmpa_ior
329     {
330     \__tag_role_read_namespace_line:nw {#1} ##1,,, \q_stop
331     }
332     \ior_close:N\g_tmpa_ior
333     }
334     {
335     \msg_info:nnn{tag}{namespace-missing}{#2}
336     }
337 }
338

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_read\_namespace:nn.)

\\_\_tag\_role\_read\_namespace:n

This command reads the default namespace file.

```

339 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_read_namespace:n #1 %name of namespace
340 {
341     \__tag_role_read_namespace:nn {#1}{#1}
342 }

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_read\_namespace:n.)

## 1.5 Reading the default data

The order is important as we want pdf2 and latex as default: if two namespace define the same tag, the last one defines which one is used if the namespace is not explicitly given.

```
343 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {pdf}
344 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {pdf2}
345 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {mathml}
```

in pdf 1.7 the following namespaces should only store the settings for later use:

```
346 \bool_set_false:N\l__tag_role_update_bool
347 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {latex-book}
348 \bool_set_true:N\l__tag_role_update_bool
349 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {latex}
350 \__tag_role_read_namespace:nn {latex} {latex-lab}
351 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {pdf}
352 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {pdf2}
```

But the class provides a `\chapter` command then we switch

```
353 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
354 {
355   \hook_gput_code:nnn {begindocument}{tagpdf}
356   {
357     \bool_lazy_and:nnT
358     {
359       \cs_if_exist_p:N \chapter
360     }
361     {
362       \cs_if_exist_p:N \c@chapter
363     }
364     {
365       \prop_map_inline:cn{g__tag_role_NS_latex-book_prop}
366       {
367         \__tag_role_add_tag:ne {#1}{\use_i:nn #2\c_empty_tl\c_empty_tl}
368       }
369     }
370   }
371 }
372 {
373   \hook_gput_code:nnn {begindocument}{tagpdf}
374   {
375     \bool_lazy_and:nnT
376     {
377       \cs_if_exist_p:N \chapter
378     }
379     {
380       \cs_if_exist_p:N \c@chapter
381     }
382     {
383       \prop_map_inline:cn{g__tag_role_NS_latex-book_prop}
384       {
385         \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ latex-book }
386         \prop_gput:Nne
387         \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}{\use_i:nn #2\c_empty_tl\c_empty_tl}
388       }
389     }
390   }
391 }
```

```

390     }
391 }

```

## 1.6 Parent-child rules

PDF define various rules about which tag can be a child of another tag. The following code implements the matrix to allow to use it in tests.

`\g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray` This intarray will store the rule as a number. For parent nm and child ij (n,m,i,j digits) the rule is at position nmij. As we have around 56 tags, we need roughly a size 6000.

```

392 \intarray_new:Nn \g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray {6000}
(End of definition for \g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray.)

```

`\c__tag_role_rules_prop` and `\c__tag_role_rules_num_prop` These two properties map the rule strings to numbers and back. There are in tagpdf-data.dtx near the csv files for easier maintenance.

(End of definition for `\c__tag_role_rules_prop` and `\c__tag_role_rules_num_prop`.)

`\_tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn` The helper command is used to store the rule. It assumes that parent and child are given as 2-digit number!

```

393 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn #1 #2 #3 % num parent, num child, #3
394 {
395   \intarray_gset:Nnn \g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray
396     { #1#2 }{0\prop_item:Nn\c__tag_role_rules_prop{#3}}
397 }

```

(End of definition for `\_tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn`.)

### 1.6.1 Reading in the csv-files

This counter will be used to identify the first (non-comment) line

```

398 \int_zero:N \l__tag_tmpa_int

```

Open the file depending on the PDF version

```

399 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
400 {
401   \ior_open:Nn \g_tmpa_ior {tagpdf-parent-child.csv}
402 }
403 {
404   \ior_open:Nn \g_tmpa_ior {tagpdf-parent-child-2.csv}
405 }

```

Now the main loop over the file

```

406 \ior_map_inline:Nn \g_tmpa_ior
407 {

```

ignore lines containing only comments

```

408   \tl_if_empty:nF{#1}
409   {

```

count the lines ...

```

410     \int_incr:N\l__tag_tmpa_int

```

put the line into a seq. Attention! empty cells are dropped.

```

411     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq { #1 }
412     \int_compare:nNnTF {\l__tag_tmpa_int}=1

```

This handles the header line. It gives the tags 2-digit numbers

```

413     {
414         \seq_map_indexed_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
415         {
416             \prop_gput:Nne\g__tag_role_index_prop
417             {##2}
418             {\int_compare:nNnT{##1}<{10}{0}##1}
419         }
420     }

```

now the data lines.

```

421     {
422         \seq_set_from_clist:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq { #1 }

```

get the name of the child tag from the first column

```

423         \seq_pop_left:NN\l__tag_tmpa_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl

```

get the number of the child, and store it in \l\_\_tag\_tmpb\_tl

```

424         \prop_get:NVN \g__tag_role_index_prop \l__tag_tmpa_tl \l__tag_tmpb_tl

```

remove column 2+3

```

425         \seq_pop_left:NN\l__tag_tmpa_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl
426         \seq_pop_left:NN\l__tag_tmpa_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl

```

Now map over the rest. The index ##1 gives us the number of the parent, ##2 is the data.

```

427         \seq_map_indexed_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
428         {
429             \exp_args:Nne
430             \__tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn {##1}{\l__tag_tmpb_tl}{ ##2 }
431         }
432     }
433 }
434 }

```

close the read handle.

```

435 \ior_close:N\g_tmpa_ior

```

The Root, Hn and mathml tags are special and need to be added explicitly

```

436 \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop{StructTreeRoot}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
437 \prop_gput:Nne\g__tag_role_index_prop{Root}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
438 \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop{Hn}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
439 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
440 {
441     \int_step_inline:nn{6}
442     {
443         \prop_gput:Nne\g__tag_role_index_prop{H#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
444     }
445 }
446 {
447     \int_step_inline:nn{10}
448     {
449         \prop_gput:Nne\g__tag_role_index_prop{H#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
450     }

```

all mathml tags are currently handled identically

```

451     \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop {mathml}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
452     \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop {math}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
453     \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_mathml_prop
454     {
455         \prop_gput:NnV\g__tag_role_index_prop{#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
456     }
457     \prop_gput:NnV\g__tag_role_index_prop{math}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
458 }

```

## 1.6.2 Retrieving the parent-child rule

`\__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:nnnN`

This command retrieves the rule (as a number) and stores it in the `tl`-var. It assumes that the tag in `#1` is a standard tag after role mapping for which a rule exist and is *not* one of Part, Div, NonStruct as the real parent has already been identified. `#3` can be used to pass along data about the original tags and is only used in messages.

TODO check temporary variables. Check if the `tl`-var should be fix.

```

459 \tl_new:N \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
460 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:nnnN #1 #2 #3 #4
461 % #1 parent (string) #2 child (string) #3 text for messages (eg. about Div or Rolemapping)
462 % #4 tl for state
463 {
464     \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_index_prop{#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
465     \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_index_prop{#2}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
466     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
467     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
468     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
469     {

```

Get the rule from the intarray

```

470         \tl_set:Ne#4
471         {
472             \intarray_item:Nn
473             \g__tag_role_parent_child_intarray
474             {\l__tag_tmpa_tl\l__tag_tmpb_tl}
475         }

```

If the state is `‡` something is wrong ...

```

476         \int_compare:nNnT
477         {#4} = {\prop_item:Nn\c__tag_role_rules_prop{‡}}
478         {
479             %warn ?

```

we must take the current child from the stack if is already there, depending on location the check is called, this could also remove the parent, but that is ok too.

```

480     }

```

This is the message, this can perhaps go into debug mode.

```

481     \group_begin:
482     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_tmpa_int*\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
483     {
484         \prop_get:NVNF\c__tag_role_rules_num_prop #4 \l__tag_tmpa_tl
485         {
486             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {unknown}

```

```

487     }
488     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#1}
489     \msg_note:nneee
490     { tag }
491     { role-parent-child }
492     { #1 }
493     { #2 }
494     {
495       #4~(=\l__tag_tmpa_tl')
496       \iow_newline:
497       #3
498     }
499   }
500   \group_end:
501 }
502 {
503   \tl_set:Nn#4 {0}
504   \msg_warning:nneee
505   { tag }
506   {role-parent-child}
507   { #1 }
508   { #2 }
509   { unknown! }
510 }
511 }
512 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:nnnN {VVVN,VVN}

```

(End of definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_get\_parent\_child\_rule:nnnN.)

`\__tag_check_parent_child:nnnnN`

This command translates rolemaps its arguments and then calls `\__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:nnnN`. It does not try to resolve inheritance of Div etc but instead warns that the rule can not be detected in this case. In pdf 2.0 the name spaces of the tags are relevant, so we have arguments for them, but in pdf <2.0 they are ignored and can be left empty.

```

513 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
514 {
515   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_parent_child:nnnnN #1 #2 #3 #4 #5
516   {%#1 parent tag,#2 NS, #3 child tag, #4 NS, #5 tl var
517     {

```

for debugging messages we store the arguments.

```

518     \prop_put:Nnn \l__tag_role_debug_prop {parent} {#1}
519     \prop_put:Nnn \l__tag_role_debug_prop {child} {#3}

```

get the standard tags through rolemapping if needed at first the parent

```

520     \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_role_index_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
521     {
522       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#1}
523     }
524     {
525       \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
526       {
527         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {\q_no_value}
528       }
529     }

```



now the child

```
530     \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_role_index_prop {#3}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
531     {
532       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#3}
533     }
534     {
535       \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#3}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
536       {
537         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {\q_no_value}
538       }
539     }
```

if we got tags for parent and child we call the checking command

```
540     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
541     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
542     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
543     {
544       \__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:VVnN
545       \l__tag_tmpa_tl \l__tag_tmpb_tl
546       {Rolemapped~from:~'#1'~-->~'#3'}
547       #5
548     }
549     {
550       \tl_set:Nn #5 {0}
551       \msg_warning:nneee
552       { tag }
553       {role-parent-child}
554       { #1 }
555       { #3 }
556       { unknown! }
557     }
558   }
559   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_parent_child:nnN #1#2#3
560   {
561     \__tag_check_parent_child:nnnnN {#1}{#2}{#3}
562   }
563 }
```

and now the pdf 2.0 version The version with three arguments retrieves the default names space and then calls the full command. Not sure if this will ever be needed but we leave it for now.

```
564 {
565   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_parent_child:nnN #1 #2 #3
566   {
567     \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
568     \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#2}\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_tl
569     \str_if_eq:nnT{#2}{MC}{\tl_clear:N \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_tl}
570     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
571     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl }
572     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_tl }
573     {
574       \__tag_check_parent_child:nVnVN
575       {#1}\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
576       {#2}\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_tl
577     }
578   }
579 }
```

```

577         #3
578     }
579     {
580         \tl_set:Nn #3 {0}
581         \msg_warning:nneee
582         { tag }
583         {role-parent-child}
584         { #1 }
585         { #2 }
586         { unknown! }
587     }
588 }

```

and now the real command.

```

589 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_parent_child:nnnnN #1 #2 #3 #4 #5 %tag,NS,tag,NS, t1 va
590 {
591     \prop_put:Nnn \l__tag_role_debug_prop {parent} {#1/#2}
592     \prop_put:Nnn \l__tag_role_debug_prop {child} {#3/#4}

```

If the namespace is empty, we assume a standard tag, otherwise we retrieve the rolemap-  
ping from the namespace

```

593     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
594     {
595         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#1}
596     }
597     {
598         \prop_if_exist:cTF { g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop }
599         {
600             \prop_get:cnNTF
601             { g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop }
602             {#1}
603             \l__tag_tmpa_tl
604             {
605                 \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl {\tl_head:N\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
606                 \tl_if_empty:NT\l__tag_tmpa_tl
607                 {
608                     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#1}
609                 }
610             }
611             {
612                 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {\q_no_value}
613             }
614         }
615         {
616             \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-NS} { #2}
617             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {\q_no_value}
618         }
619     }

```

and the same for the child If the namespace is empty, we assume a standard tag, otherwise  
we retrieve the rolemapping from the namespace

```

620     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
621     {
622         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#3}
623     }

```

```

624     {
625       \prop_if_exist:cTF { g__tag_role_NS_#4_prop }
626       {
627         \prop_get:cnNTF
628         { g__tag_role_NS_#4_prop }
629         {#3}
630         \l__tag_tmpb_tl
631         {
632           \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_tmpb_tl { \tl_head:N\l__tag_tmpb_tl }
633           \tl_if_empty:NT\l__tag_tmpb_tl
634           {
635             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#3}
636           }
637         }
638         {
639           \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {\q_no_value}
640         }
641       }
642       {
643         \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-NS} { #4}
644         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {\q_no_value}
645       }
646     }

```

and now get the relation

```

647     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
648     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
649     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
650     {
651       \__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:VVnN
652       \l__tag_tmpa_tl \l__tag_tmpb_tl
653       {Rolemapped~from~'#1/#2'--->~'#3\str_if_empty:nF{#4}{/#4}' }
654       #5
655     }
656     {
657       \tl_set:Nn #5 {0}
658       \msg_warning:nneee
659       { tag }
660       {role-parent-child}
661       { #1 }
662       { #3 }
663       { unknown! }
664     }
665   }
666 }
667 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_check_parent_child:nnN {VVN}
668 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_check_parent_child:nnnnN {VVVVN,nVnVN,VVnnN}
669 </package>

```

(End of definition for \_\_tag\_check\_parent\_child:nnnnN.)

**\tag\_check\_child:nnTF**

```

670 <base>\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \tag_check_child:nn #1 #2 {T,F,TF}{\prg_return_true}
671 <*package>
672 \prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn \tag_check_child:nn #1 #2 {T,F,TF}

```

```

673 {
674   \seq_get:NN\g__tag_struct_stack_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl
675   \__tag_struct_get_parentrole:eNN
676     {\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
677     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
678     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
679   \__tag_check_parent_child:VVnnN
680     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
681     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
682     {#1}{#2}
683     \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
684   \int_compare:nNnTF { \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl } < {0}
685     {\prg_return_false:}
686     {\prg_return_true:}
687 }

```

(End of definition for `\tag_check_child:nTF`. This function is documented on page 161.)

## 1.7 Remapping of tags

In some context it can be necessary to remap or replace the tags. That means instead of `tag=H1` or `tag=section` one wants the effect of `tag=Span`. Or instead of `tag=P` one wants `tag=Code`.

The following command provide some general interface for this. The core idea is that before a tag is set it is fed through a function that can change it. We want to be able to chain such functions, so all of them manipulate the same variables.

```

\l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl
\l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl
688 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl
689 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_role_remap_tag_tl` and `\l__tag_role_remap_NS_tl`.)

`\__tag_role_remap:` This function is used in the structure and the mc code before using a tag. By default it does nothing with the `tl` vars. Perhaps this should be a hook?

```

690 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_remap: { }

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_role_remap:.`)

`\__tag_role_remap_id:` This is copy in case we have to restore the main command.

```

691 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_role_remap_id: \__tag_role_remap:

```

(End of definition for `\__tag_role_remap_id:.`)

## 1.8 Key-val user interface

The user interface uses the key `add-new-tag`, which takes either a keyval list as argument, or a tag/role.

```

tag (rolemap-key)
tag-namespace (rolemap-key) 692 \keys_define:nn { __tag / tag-role }
role (rolemap-key)          693 {
role-namespace (rolemap-key) 694 ,tag .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
role/new-tag (setup-key)    695 ,tag-namespace .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
add-new-tag (deprecated)    696 ,role .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
                             697 ,role-namespace .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
                             698 }
                             699
700 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
701 {
702   role/mathml-tags .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool
703 ,role/new-tag .code:n =
704 {
705   \keys_set_known:nnnN
706     {__tag/tag-role}
707     {
708       tag-namespace=user,
709       role-namespace=, %so that we can test for it.
710       #1
711       }{__tag/tag-role}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
712     \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
713     {
714       \exp_args:NNno \seq_set_split:Nnn \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / } {\l__tag_tmpa_tl/}
715       \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq {1} }
716       \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq {2} }
717     }
718     \tl_if_empty:NT \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
719     {
720       \prop_get:NVNTF
721         \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop
722         \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
723         \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
724         {
725           \prop_if_in:NVF\g__tag_role_NS_prop \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
726           {
727             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl {user}
728           }
729         }
730         {
731           \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl {user}
732         }
733       }
734     \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
735     {
736       %TODO add check for emptyness?
737       \__tag_role_add_tag:VV
738         \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
739         \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
740     }
741     {
742       \__tag_role_add_tag:VVVV
743         \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
744         \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl

```

```

745         \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
746         \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
747     }
748 }
749 ,role/map-tags .choice:
750 ,role/map-tags/false .code:n = { \socket_assign_plug:nn { tag/struct/tag } {latex-
tags} }
751 ,role/map-tags/pdf .code:n = { \socket_assign_plug:nn { tag/struct/tag } {pdf-
tags} }

```

deprecated names

```

752 , mathml-tags .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool
753 , add-new-tag .meta:n = {role/new-tag={#1}}
754 }
755 </package>

```

*(End of definition for tag (rolemap-key) and others. These functions are documented on page 161.)*

## Part XI

# The tagpdf-space module

## Code related to real space chars

### Part of the tagpdf package

---

`activate/space` (setup-key)  
`interwordspace` (deprecated)

---

This key allows to activate/deactivate the real space chars if the engine supports it. The allowed values are `true`, `on`, `false`, `off`. The old name of the key `interwordspace` is still supported but deprecated.

---

`show-spaces` (deprecated)

---

This key is deprecated. Use `debug/show=spaces` instead. This key works only with luatex and shows with small red bars where spaces have been inserted. This is only for debugging and is not completely reliable (and change affect other literals and tagging), so it should be used with care.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-space-code} {2024-11-19} {0.99i}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to real space chars}
5 </header>
```

## 1 Code for interword spaces

The code is engine/backend dependent. Basically only pdftex and luatex support real space chars. Most of the code for luatex which uses attributes is in the lua code, here are only the keys.

`activate/spaces` (setup-key)  
`interwordspace` (deprecated)  
`show-spaces` (deprecated)

```
6 <*package>
7 \bool_new:N\l__tag_showspaces_bool
8 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
9 {
10   activate/spaces .choice:,
11   activate/spaces/true .code:n =
12     { \msg_warning:nne {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{\c_sys_engine_str} },
13   activate/spaces/false .code:n=
14     { \msg_warning:nne {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{\c_sys_engine_str} },
15   activate/spaces .default:n = true,
16   debug/show/spaces .code:n = {\bool_set_true:N \l__tag_showspaces_bool},
17   debug/show/spacesOff .code:n = {\bool_set_false:N \l__tag_showspaces_bool},
```

deprecated versions:

```
18   interwordspace .choices:nn = {true,on}{\keys_set:nn{__tag/setup}{activate/spaces={true}}},
19   interwordspace .choices:nn = {false,off}{\keys_set:nn{__tag/setup}{activate/spaces={false}}},
20   interwordspace .default:n = {true},
```

```

21 show-spaces .choice:,
22 show-spaces/true .meta:n = {debug/show=spaces},
23 show-spaces/false .meta:n = {debug/show=spacesOff},
24 show-spaces .default:n = true
25 }
26 \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
27 {
28   \sys_if_output_pdf:TF
29   {
30     \pdfglyphtounicode{space}{0020}
31     \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
32     {
33       activate/spaces/true .code:n = { \AddToHook{shipout/firstpage}[tagpdf/space]{\p
34       activate/spaces/false .code:n = { \RemoveFromHook{shipout/firstpage}[tagpdf/spac
35       activate/spaces .default:n = true,
36     }
37   }
38   {
39     \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
40     {
41       activate/spaces .choices:nn = { true, false }
42       { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{dvi} },
43       activate/spaces .default:n = true,
44     }
45   }
46 }
47
48
49 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
50 {
51   \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
52   {
53     activate/spaces .choice:,
54     activate/spaces/true .code:n =
55     {
56       \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
57       \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.func.markspaceon()}
58     },
59     activate/spaces/false .code:n =
60     {
61       \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
62       \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.func.markspaceoff()}
63     },
64     activate/spaces .default:n = true,
65     debug/show/spaces .code:n =
66     { \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.trace.showspace=true} },
67     debug/show/spacesOff .code:n =
68     { \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.trace.showspace=nil} },
69   }
70 }

```

(End of definition for activate/spaces (setup-key), interwordspace (deprecated), and show-spaces (deprecated). These functions are documented on page ??.)

`\__tag_fakespace:` For luatex we need a command for the fake space as equivalent of the pdftex primitive.



```

71 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
72 {
73   \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_fakespace:
74   {
75     \group_begin:
76     \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.func.fakespace()}
77     \skip_horizontal:n{\c_zero_skip}
78     \group_end:
79   }
80 }

```

We need also a command to interrupt the insertion of real space chars in places where we want to insert manually special spaces. In pdftex this can be done with `\pdfinterwordspaceoff` and `\pdfinterwordspaceon`. These commands insert what-sits and this mean they act globally. In luatex a attribute is used to this effect, for consistency this is also set globally.

The off command sets the attributes in luatex.

```

\tag_spacechar_on: 81 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_off: {}
\tag_spacechar_off: 82 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_on: {}
83
84 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
85 {
86   \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_off:
87   {
88     \lua_now:e
89     {
90       tex.setattribute
91       (
92         "global",
93         luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_interwordspaceOff_attr,
94         1
95       )
96     }
97   }
98   \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_on:
99   {
100    \lua_now:e
101    {
102      tex.setattribute
103      (
104        "global",
105        luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_interwordspaceOff_attr,
106        -2147483647
107      )
108    }
109  }
110 }
111 \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
112 {
113   \sys_if_output_pdf:T
114   {
115     \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_off:
116     {

```

```
117         \pdfinterwordspaceoff
118     }
119     \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_on:
120     {
121         \pdfinterwordspaceon
122     }
123 }
124 }
```

```
125 </package>
```

*(End of definition for `\_tag_fakespace:`, `\tag_spacechar_on:`, and `\tag_spacechar_off:`. These functions are documented on page ??.)*

# Index

The italic numbers denote the pages where the corresponding entry is described, numbers underlined point to the definition, all others indicate the places where it is used.

Symbols	
<code>\#</code> .....	1114, 1118
<code>\\</code> .....	10, 23, 27, 28, 44, 49, 50, 51, 56, 58, 60, 67, 70, 72, 78, 80, 91, 261, 262, 263, 410, 473, 481
<code>\_</code> .....	454, 465
A	
<code>activate_ (setup-key)</code> .....	36, <u>287</u>
<code>activate-all</code> (deprecated) (key) .....	<u>1</u>
<code>activate-mc</code> (deprecated) (key) .....	<u>1</u>
<code>activate-struct</code> (deprecated) (key) ...	<u>1</u>
<code>activate-tree</code> (deprecated) (key) .....	<u>1</u>
<code>activate/all</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>260</u>
<code>activate/mc</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>260</u>
<code>activate/socket_ (setup-key)</code> .....	<u>287</u>
<code>activate/softhyphen</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>294</u>
<code>activate/space_ (setup-key)</code> .....	<u>183</u>
<code>activate/spaces</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u>
<code>activate/spaces_ (setup-key)</code> .....	<u>6</u>
<code>activate/struct</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>260</u>
<code>activate/struct-dest</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>260</u>
<code>activate/tagunmarked</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>291</u>
<code>activate/tree</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>260</u>
<code>actualtext</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>526</u>
<code>actualtext_ (mc-key)</code> .....	<u>72</u> , <u>257</u> , <u>458</u>
<code>add-new-tag_ (deprecated)</code> .....	<u>692</u>
<code>add-new-tag_ (setup-key)</code> .....	<u>161</u>
<code>\AddToHook</code> .....	13, 16, 33, 58, 71, 78, 107, 305, 389, 411, 545, 547, 548, 552, 556, 563, 592, 644
<code>AF</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>687</u>
<code>AFinline</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>687</u>
<code>AFinline-o</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>687</u>
<code>AFref</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>687</u>
<code>alt</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>526</u>
<code>alt_ (mc-key)</code> .....	<u>72</u> , <u>257</u> , <u>458</u>
<code>artifact_ (mc-key)</code> .....	<u>72</u> , <u>257</u> , <u>458</u>
artifact-bool internal commands:	
<code>__artifact-bool</code> .....	<u>121</u>
artifact-type internal commands:	
<code>__artifact-type</code> .....	<u>121</u>
<code>attr-unknown</code> .....	<u>20</u> , <u>84</u>
<code>attribute</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>1295</u>
<code>attribute-class</code> (key) .....	<u>1</u> , <u>1261</u>
B	
benchmark commands:	
<code>\benchmark_tic:</code> .....	490, 492
<code>\benchmark_toc:</code> .....	493
bool commands:	
<code>\bool_gset_eq:NN</code> ..	664, 679, 691, 709
<code>\bool_gset_false:N</code> .....	50, 51, 61, 240, 446, 665, 692
<code>\bool_gset_true:N</code> .....	47, 49, 56, 131, 179, 374
<code>\bool_if:NTF</code> .....	9, 13, 18, 31, 40, 40, 67, 75, 80, 85, 91, 96, 111, 146, 194, 202, 210, 228, 239, 241, 258, 266, 297, 314, 323, 323, 343, 378, 381, 395, 440, 451, 462, 476, 478, 495, 503, 528, 535, 596, 659, 674, 686, 704, 920, 981
<code>\bool_if:nTF</code> .....	6, 360
<code>\bool_if_exist_p:N</code> .....	44
<code>\bool_lazy_all:nTF</code> .....	116
<code>\bool_lazy_and:nnTF</code> .....	43, 150, 160, 307, 311, 357, 375, 399, 466, 539, 540, 570, 647
<code>\bool_lazy_and_p:nn</code> .....	8
<code>\bool_new:N</code> ...	7, 16, 20, 21, 41, 42, 63, 73, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 132, 134, 136, 137, 138, 257, 325, 326, 655
<code>\bool_set_false:N</code> .....	17, 180, 205, 206, 207, 229, 230, 231, 241, 346, 423, 632, 658, 685
<code>\bool_set_true:N</code> .....	16, 133, 135, 215, 216, 217, 240, 241, 242, 258, 348, 422, 631
<code>\box</code> .....	408
box commands:	
<code>\box_dp:N</code> .....	180, 184
<code>\box_ht:N</code> .....	170
<code>\box_new:N</code> .....	121, 122
<code>\box_set_dp:Nn</code> .....	178, 180
<code>\box_set_eq:NN</code> .....	193
<code>\box_set_ht:Nn</code> .....	177, 179
<code>\box_use_drop:N</code> .....	182, 186
<code>\boxmaxdepth</code> .....	84, 181
C	
c@g internal commands:	
<code>\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int</code> .....	11, 15, 28, 37, 50, 57, 60, 68, 74, 100, 138, 174, 182, 244, 247, 274, 279, 308, 349, 356, 421
<code>\c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int</code> .....	154, 474



exp commands:		int commands:	
\exp_args:Ne	122, 479	\int_abs:n	145
\exp_args:NNe	86, 89, 94, 195, 215	\int_case:mnTF	99, 114, 309
\exp_args:Nne	79, 342, 346, 429, 464, 497	\int_compare:nNnTF	22, 57, 70, 97, 116, 132, 137, 150, 172, 173, 185, 213, 215, 234, 261, 264, 289, 295, 382, 389, 396, 403, 406, 412, 418, 423, 431, 438, 446, 453, 476, 482, 569, 578, 684, 867, 933, 1079, 1142
\exp_args:NNne	94	\int_compare:nTF	179, 329, 1281, 1283, 1285, 1309, 1335
\exp_args:NNno	714	\int_compare_p:nNn	544
\exp_args:NV	198, 204, 352, 381, 392, 397	\int_decr:N	212, 237
\exp_last_unbraced:NV	186, 187, 240, 241, 459, 463, 1024	\int_eval:n	138, 190, 296, 313, 388, 474, 482, 541, 546, 549, 709, 752, 771, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 947, 975, 976, 978, 989, 1291
\exp_not:n	227, 246, 313	\int_gincr:N	182, 244, 274, 345, 349, 349, 353, 356, 357, 363, 367, 371, 375, 474, 695, 825, 836
		\int_gset:Nn	7, 81, 157, 292
		\int_gzero:N	300
		\int_if_zero:nTF	212, 213, 237, 238, 470, 478
		\int_incr:N	92, 204, 228, 410
		\int_new:N	77, 120, 125, 200, 268, 328, 329, 330, 331, 687
		\int_rand:n	61, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 71
		\int_set:Nn	279, 282, 285, 286, 287
		\int_step_inline:nn	441, 447
		\int_step_inline:nnn	25, 90, 261
		\int_step_inline:nnnn	148, 173, 176, 193, 314, 320
		\int_to_arabic:n	145, 147
		\int_to_Hex:n	61, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 71
		\int_use:N	11, 15, 18, 28, 37, 39, 50, 57, 58, 60, 68, 74, 75, 99, 100, 100, 101, 115, 135, 137, 165, 172, 174, 203, 220, 227, 234, 246, 247, 253, 271, 279, 308, 387, 421, 454, 465, 499, 531, 567, 574, 575, 579, 583, 584, 593, 609, 617, 671, 682, 698, 701, 704, 745, 747, 764, 766, 845, 851, 856, 863, 866, 883, 901, 910, 955, 960, 1087, 1150, 1229, 1288, 1339
		\int_zero:N	89, 104, 398
		intarray commands:	
		\intarray_gset:Nnn	292, 395
		\intarray_item:Nn	294, 297, 472
		\intarray_new:Nn	284, 392
		interwordspace <sub>□</sub> (deprecated)	183, <u>6</u>
		ior commands:	
		\ior_close:N	332, 435
		\ior_map_inline:Nn	328, 406
<b>F</b>			
file commands:			
\file_if_exist:nTF	324		
\file_input:n	310		
firstkey (key)	<u>1</u>		
firstkid (key)	<u>526</u>		
flag commands:			
\flag_clear:n	241		
\flag_height:n	178, 253		
\flag_new:n	176		
\flag_raise:n	254		
fnote internal commands:			
\__fnote_gput_ref:nn	73		
\fontencoding	6		
\fontfamily	6		
\fontseries	6		
\fontshape	6		
\fontsize	6		
\footins	601		
<b>G</b>			
g internal commands:			
\g_tag_struct_ref_by_dest:	80		
group commands:			
\group_begin:	66, 75, 177, 372, 481, 694, 786, 794, 835		
\group_end:	73, 78, 232, 424, 500, 712, 790, 798, 995		
<b>H</b>			
\halign	40		
\hangindent	406		
\hbox	397		
hbox commands:			
\hbox_set:Nn	171, 172		
hook commands:			
\hook_gput_code:nnn	7, 11, 33, 57, 65, 79, 155, 241, 290, 291, 355, 373, 379, 383, 740, 753, 763, 776		
\hook_new:n	340		
\hook_use:n	345		
<b>I</b>			
\ignorespaces	36		



<code>\msg_new:nnnn</code> .....	104	pdf commands:
<code>\msg_note:nn</code> .....	28, 201	<code>\pdf_activate_indexed_structure_-</code>
<code>\msg_note:nnn</code> .....		destination: .....
.....	203, 220, 398, 405, 440, 448	<code>\pdf_bdc:nn</code> .....
<code>\msg_note:nnnn</code> .....		<code>\pdf_bdc_shipout:nn</code> .....
.....	226, 245, 384, 391, 425, 433	<code>\pdf_bmc:n</code> .....
<code>\msg_note:nnnnn</code> .....	489	<code>\l_pdf_current_structure_-</code>
<code>\msg_redirect_name:nnn</code> .....	567	destination_tl .....
<code>\msg_show_item_unbraced:n</code> .....	278	<code>\pdf_emc:</code> .....
<code>\msg_show_item_unbraced:nn</code> .....	269	<code>\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n</code> .....
<code>\msg_term:nnnnn</code> .....	263, 272	.....
<code>\msg_warning:nn</code> .....	24, 215, 266	.....
<code>\msg_warning:nnm</code> .....		100, 110, 115,
.....	12, 14, 42, 44, 53, 180, 203,	158, 167, 192, 271, 1246, 1269, 1305
244, 248, 250, 256, 279, 302, 323,		<code>\pdf_object_if_exist:n</code> .....
616, 640, 643, 653, 1093, 1112, 1156		<code>\pdf_object_if_exist:nTF</code> ..
<code>\msg_warning:nnnn</code> .....	414, 461, 548	<code>\pdf_object_new:n</code> .....
<code>\msg_warning:nnnnn</code> .....		.....
.....	219, 412, 504, 551, 581, 658, 940	<code>\pdf_object_new_indexed:nn</code> .
		<code>\pdf_object_ref:n</code> ..
		104, 56, 130,
		132, 134, 140, 194, 310, 327, 745, 807
		<code>\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn</code> .....
		.....
		56, 73, 95, 168, 204, 235,
		251, 410, 470, 963, 1060, 1123, 1164
		<code>\pdf_object_ref_last:</code> .....
		.....
		104, 103, 117, 123, 274, 1324
		<code>\pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn</code> ..
		.....
		99, 110, 119, 266, 1319
		<code>\pdf_object_write:nnn</code> .....
		.....
		250, 274, 303, 322, 329, 334
		<code>\pdf_object_write_indexed:nnnn</code> .
		.....
		138, 423
		<code>\pdf_pageobject_ref:n</code> .....
		201, 460
		<code>\pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN</code> .....
		42
		<code>\pdf_uncompress:</code> .....
		288, 290
		<code>\pdf_version_compare:NnTF</code> .....
		.....
		20, 81, 127, 150, 156,
		229, 259, 316, 353, 399, 439, 513, 734
		pdfannot commands:
		<code>\pdfannot_dict_put:nnn</code> .....
		.....
		141, 747, 770, 788, 793
		<code>\pdfannot_link_ref_last:</code> ..
		757, 780
		pdfdict commands:
		<code>\pdfdict_gput:nnn</code> .....
		.....
		38, 45, 53, 189, 269, 326
		<code>\pdfdict_if_empty:nTF</code> .....
		320
		<code>\pdfdict_new:n</code> .....
		18, 35, 37
		<code>\pdfdict_put:nnn</code> ..
		787, 788, 795, 796
		<code>\pdfdict_use:n</code> .....
		276, 324, 331
		<code>\pdffakespace</code> .....
		38, 316
		pdffile commands:
		<code>\pdffile_embed_stream:nnN</code> .
		688, 696
		<code>\pdffile_embed_stream:nnn</code> .....
		142
		<code>\pdfglyphtounicode</code> .....
		30
		<code>\pdfinterwordsoff</code> .....
		185, 117
		<code>\pdfinterwordspaceon</code> .....
		185, 33, 121

## N

<code>namespace_(rolemap-key)</code> .....	161
<code>new-tag</code> .....	20, 94
<code>newattribute_(deprecated)</code> .....	105, 1243
<code>\newcommand</code> .....	628, 629
<code>\newcounter</code> .....	6, 8, 154
<code>\NewDocumentCommand</code> .....	6,
23, 29, 34, 40, 46, 51, 56, 126, 318, 633	
<code>\newmarks</code> .....	13
<code>no-struct-dest (deprecated) (key)</code> .....	1
<code>\noindent</code> .....	406
<code>\nointerlineskip</code> .....	185

## P

<code>\PackageError</code> .....	13
<code>\PackageWarning</code> .....	28, 589
<code>page/exclude-header-footer_(setup-</code>	
key) .....	39, 712
<code>page/tabsorder (key)</code> .....	1, 296
<code>para-flattened_(deprecated)</code> .....	419
<code>para-hook-count-wrong</code> .....	20, 104
<code>para/flattened_(tool-key)</code> .....	419
<code>para/maintag_(setup-key)</code> .....	419
<code>para/maintag_(tool-key)</code> .....	419
<code>para/tag_(setup-key)</code> .....	419
<code>para/tag_(tool-key)</code> .....	419
<code>para/tagging_(setup-key)</code> .....	38, 419
<code>para/tagging_(tool-key)</code> .....	419
<code>\PARALABEL</code> .....	521
<code>paratag_(deprecated)</code> .....	419
<code>paratagging_(deprecated)</code> .....	38, 419
<code>paratagging-show_(deprecated)</code> ..	38, 419
<code>parent (key)</code> .....	1, 526

pdfmanagement commands:	
\pdfmanagement_add:nnn	51, 69, 70, 298, 300, 302, 385
\pdfmanagement_if_active_p:	9, 10
\pdfmanagement_remove:nn	304
pdfmanagement internal commands:	
\l_pdfmanagement_delayed_	
shipout_bool	44, 45
prg commands:	
\prg_do_nothing:	82, 102, 117, 285, 380, 381, 382, 383, 731, 732, 733, 734
\prg_generate_conditional_	
variant:Nnn	139
\prg_new_conditional:Nnn	68, 226
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn	110, 133, 148, 158, 352, 358, 369
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn	82, 233
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn	670
\prg_replicate:nn	144
\prg_return_false:	78, 111, 128, 139, 142, 155, 165, 230, 355, 367, 373, 685
\prg_return_true:	79, 125, 138, 152, 162, 229, 356, 366, 372, 670, 686
\prg_set_conditional:Npnn	114
\prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn	672
process commands:	
process_softhyphen_pre <sub>UUUU</sub> process_	
softhyphen_post	882
\ProcessOptions	53
prop commands:	
\prop_clear:N	175
\prop_count:N	196
\prop_get:NnN	137, 145, 179, 200, 215, 216, 270, 301, 408, 424, 436, 438, 451, 452, 464, 465, 567, 568, 935
\prop_get:NnNTF	43, 96, 160, 168, 181, 198, 198, 213, 232, 238, 284, 407, 484, 520, 525, 530, 535, 600, 627, 632, 645, 720, 895, 1025, 1107, 1184
\prop_gput:Nnn	26, 30, 31, 33, 34, 56, 88, 89, 90, 91, 94, 97, 98, 98, 99, 100, 101, 103, 110, 111, 112, 113, 119, 120, 121, 122, 143, 144, 148, 151, 165, 183, 203, 207, 219, 222, 262, 284, 284, 287, 288, 316, 333, 385, 386, 409, 411, 416, 437, 443, 449, 455, 457, 530, 977, 988, 1062, 1125, 1245, 1277, 1324
\prop_gremove:Nn	136, 138
\prop_gset_eq:NN	137, 974
\prop_if_exist:NTF	176, 202, 236, 322, 405, 598, 625, 1047, 1104
\prop_if_exist_p:N	541
\prop_if_in:NnTF	72, 130, 170, 178, 277, 725, 1273, 1313, 1317
\prop_item:Nn	41, 76, 145, 185, 187, 224, 292, 396, 477, 482, 507, 516, 985, 1322, 1329
\prop_map_function:NN	267
\prop_map_inline:Nn	82, 260, 265, 286, 318, 365, 378, 383, 453
\prop_map_tokens:Nn	336
\prop_new:N	7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 11, 19, 24, 25, 32, 33, 116, 135, 180, 838, 1238, 1241
\prop_new_linked:N	17, 62, 67, 69, 181, 1239
\prop_put:Nnn	144, 182, 518, 519, 591, 592
\prop_show:N	68, 95, 189, 971, 992, 1291, 1318
property commands:	
\property_gset:nnnn	270
\property_new:nnnn	163, 166, 170, 173, 177
\property_record:nn	152
\property_ref:nn	103, 157
\property_ref:nnn	41, 156, 161, 180, 184, 199, 201, 202, 277, 331, 342, 461, 1048, 1054, 1057, 1063, 1070
\providecommand	62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 69, 70, 323, 594, 595
\ProvidesExplFile	3
\ProvidesExplPackage	3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 7, 7, 26, 37, 1234
<b>Q</b>	
\quad	235, 236
quark commands:	
\q_no_value	527, 537, 612, 617, 639, 644
\quark_if_no_value:NTF	138, 146, 180, 201, 217, 271, 302, 939
\quark_if_no_value_p:N	467, 468, 541, 542, 571, 572, 648, 649
\q_stop	261, 294, 330
<b>R</b>	
raw <sub>␣</sub> (mc-key)	72, 257, 458
ref (key)	1, 526, 664
\RemoveFromHook	34, 550, 551
\renewcommand	631, 632
\RenewDocumentCommand	8
\RequirePackage	20, 54, 316, 319, 325, 328, 590
\rlap	465
role <sub>␣</sub> (rolemap-key)	161, 692



role-missing ..... [20](#), [86](#)  
 role-namespace<sub>□</sub>(rolemap-key) . [161](#), [692](#)  
 role-parent-child ..... [20](#), [90](#)  
 role-remapping ..... [20](#), [92](#)  
 role-tag ..... [20](#), [94](#)  
 role-unknown ..... [20](#), [86](#)  
 role-unknown-NS ..... [20](#), [86](#)  
 role-unknown-tag ..... [20](#), [86](#)  
 role/new-attribute<sub>□</sub>(setup-key) [105](#), [1243](#)  
 role/new-tag<sub>□</sub>(setup-key) ..... [692](#)  
 root-AF (key) ..... [1](#), [801](#)

**S**

\selectfont ..... [6](#)  
 seq commands:  
   \seq\_clear:N ..... [299](#), [319](#)  
   \seq\_const\_from\_clist:Nn .... [21](#), [34](#)  
   \seq\_count:N ..... [22](#), [25](#), [57](#),  
     [311](#), [418](#), [1281](#), [1283](#), [1285](#), [1309](#), [1335](#)  
   \seq\_get:NN ..... [674](#)  
   \seq\_get:NNTF [443](#), [455](#), [869](#), [1014](#), [1021](#)  
   \seq\_gpop:NN ..... [1007](#)  
   \seq\_gpop:NNTF ..... [105](#), [1008](#)  
   \seq\_gpop\_left:NN ..... [287](#)  
   \seq\_gpush:Nn . [13](#), [15](#), [88](#), [95](#), [876](#), [916](#)  
   \seq\_gput\_left:Nn .. [43](#), [185](#), [253](#), [291](#)  
   \seq\_gput\_right:Nn .....  
     . [38](#), [146](#), [152](#), [184](#), [216](#), [237](#), [276](#), [339](#)  
   \seq\_gset\_eq:NN ..... [159](#), [221](#), [306](#)  
   \seq\_if\_empty:NTF ..... [200](#), [412](#)  
   \seq\_item:Nn [58](#), [116](#), [118](#), [125](#), [129](#),  
     [136](#), [140](#), [186](#), [328](#), [335](#), [348](#), [362](#),  
     [364](#), [371](#), [508](#), [509](#), [517](#), [518](#), [715](#), [716](#)  
   \seq\_log:N [175](#), [199](#), [251](#), [268](#), [426](#), [441](#)  
   \seq\_map\_function:NN ..... [276](#)  
   \seq\_map\_indexed\_inline:Nn [414](#), [427](#)  
   \seq\_map\_inline:Nn [282](#), [300](#), [1271](#), [1311](#)  
   \seq\_new:N .....  
     ..... [12](#), [14](#), [14](#), [15](#), [16](#), [17](#), [18](#), [19](#),  
     [21](#), [22](#), [24](#), [117](#), [118](#), [136](#), [182](#), [841](#), [1242](#)  
   \seq\_pop\_left:NN ..... [423](#), [425](#), [426](#)  
   \seq\_put\_right:Nn ..... [301](#)  
   \seq\_remove\_all:Nn ..... [304](#)  
   \seq\_set\_eq:NN ..... [207](#), [208](#)  
   \seq\_set\_from\_clist:NN ... [1266](#), [1302](#)  
   \seq\_set\_from\_clist:Nn .....  
     ..... [87](#), [90](#), [196](#), [216](#), [411](#), [422](#)  
   \seq\_set\_map\_e:NNn ..... [1267](#), [1303](#)  
   \seq\_set\_split:Nnn .....  
     ..... [50](#), [146](#), [506](#), [515](#), [714](#)  
   \seq\_show:N . [61](#), [188](#), [218](#), [219](#), [252](#),  
     [302](#), [303](#), [305](#), [349](#), [919](#), [972](#), [993](#), [1003](#)  
   \seq\_use:Nn .....  
     ..... [50](#), [110](#), [111](#), [205](#), [235](#), [236](#), [363](#), [1282](#)

\setbox ..... [396](#)  
 Setup keys:  
   activate-all (deprecated) ..... [1](#)  
   activate-mc (deprecated) ..... [1](#)  
   activate-struct (deprecated) ..... [1](#)  
   activate-tree (deprecated) ..... [1](#)  
   activate/all ..... [1](#), [260](#)  
   activate/mc ..... [1](#), [260](#)  
   activate/softhyphen ..... [1](#), [294](#)  
   activate/spaces ..... [1](#)  
   activate/struct ..... [1](#), [260](#)  
   activate/struct-dest ..... [1](#), [260](#)  
   activate/tagunmarked ..... [1](#), [291](#)  
   activate/tree ..... [1](#), [260](#)  
   debug/log ..... [1](#), [278](#)  
   debug/show ..... [277](#)  
   debug/uncompress ..... [278](#)  
   log (deprecated) ..... [278](#)  
   no-struct-dest (deprecated) ..... [1](#)  
   page/taborder ..... [1](#), [296](#)  
   root-AF ..... [1](#), [801](#)  
   taborder (deprecated) ..... [1](#), [296](#)  
   tagunmarked (deprecated) .... [1](#), [291](#)  
   uncompress (deprecated) ..... [278](#)

shipout commands:  
   \g\_shipout\_readonly\_int .....  
     ..... [99](#), [172](#), [234](#), [388](#)  
 show-kids ..... [20](#), [64](#)  
 show-spaces<sub>□</sub>(deprecated) ..... [183](#), [6](#)  
 show-struct ..... [20](#), [64](#)  
 \ShowTagging ..... [17](#), [37](#), [125](#)

skip commands:  
   \skip\_horizontal:n ..... [77](#)  
   \c\_zero\_skip ..... [77](#)

socket commands:  
   \socket\_assign\_plug:nn .....  
     ..... [525](#), [543](#), [544](#), [560](#), [750](#), [751](#)  
   \socket\_new:nn ..... [471](#), [472](#), [503](#)  
   \socket\_new\_plug:nnn .....  
     ..... [474](#), [493](#), [504](#), [513](#), [526](#)  
   \socket\_use:n .. [76](#), [545](#), [547](#), [554](#), [558](#)  
   \socket\_use:nn ..... [81](#), [557](#)  
   \socket\_use:nnn ..... [86](#)  
   \socket\_use:nw ..... [97](#)  
   \socket\_use\_expandable:n ..... [92](#)  
   \socket\_use\_expandable:nw .. [66](#), [112](#)

stash (key) ..... [1](#), [526](#)  
 stash<sub>□</sub>(mc-key) ..... [73](#), [121](#)

str commands:  
   \str\_case:nnTF ..... [60](#), [888](#)  
   \str\_const:Nn ..... [59](#)  
   \str\_if\_empty:nTF ..... [653](#)  
   \str\_if\_eq:nnTF ... [127](#), [371](#), [457](#), [569](#)  
   \str\_if\_eq\_p:nn ..... [312](#), [362](#), [364](#)

<code>\str_if_exist:NTF</code> .....	469	tag commands:	
<code>\str_new:N</code> .....	115	<code>\tag_check_benchmark_on:</code> .....	488
<code>\str_set_convert:Nnnn</code> ..	147, 280, 301, 472, 485, 561, 573, 587, 603, 676	<code>\tag_check_child:nn</code> ....	161, 670, 672
<code>\str_use:N</code> .....	67, 291, 314	<code>\tag_check_child:nnTF</code> ....	161, 670
<code>\c_tilde_str</code> .....	57, 59	<code>\tag_get:n</code> .....	17, 73, 102, 103, 119, 88, 91, 108, 108, 410
<code>\string</code> .....	20, 21, 22, 616	<code>\tag_if_active:</code> .....	110, 114
<code>struct-faulty-nesting</code> .....	20, 32	<code>\tag_if_active:TF</code> ...	17, 18, 109, 565
<code>struct-label-unknown</code> .....	20, 38	<code>\tag_if_active_p:</code> .....	17, 109, 400
<code>struct-missing-tag</code> .....	20, 35	<code>\tag_if_box_tagged:N</code> .....	17, 133
<code>struct-no-objnum</code> .....	20, 24	<code>\tag_if_box_tagged:NTF</code> ....	17, 132
<code>struct-orphan</code> .....	20, 25	<code>\tag_if_box_tagged_p:N</code> ....	17, 132
<code>struct-Ref-unknown</code> .....	42	<code>\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn</code> .....	72, 66, 189, 225, 601, 605, 610, 619, 621
<code>struct-show-closing</code> .....	20, 40	<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n</code> . .....	71, 59, 59, 62
<code>struct-stack<sub>␣</sub>(show-key)</code> .....	37, 248	<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:</code> .... .....	71, 59, 60, 70
<code>struct-unknown</code> .....	20, 22	<code>\tag_mc_begin:n</code> ...	10, 71, 25, 65, 113, 173, 173, 356, 356, 360, 366, 453, 464, 490, 522, 667, 695, 746, 769
<code>struct-used-twice</code> .....	20, 36	<code>\tag_mc_begin_pop:n</code> .....	71, 75, 79, 80, 101, 676, 706, 760, 783
Structure keys:		<code>\tag_mc_end:</code> .....	71, 31, 74, 92, 235, 235, 356, 357, 433, 439, 455, 466, 532, 673, 702, 758, 781
<code>actualtext</code> .....	1, 526	<code>\tag_mc_end_push:</code> .....	71, 64, 79, 79, 82, 661, 688, 744, 767
<code>AF</code> .....	1, 687	<code>\tag_mc_if_in:</code> .....	82, 233
<code>AInline</code> .....	1, 687	<code>\tag_mc_if_in:TF</code> ....	71, 42, 68, 226
<code>AInline-o</code> .....	1, 687	<code>\tag_mc_if_in_p:</code> .....	71, 68, 226
<code>AFref</code> .....	1, 687	<code>\tag_mc_new_stream:n</code> 72, 17, 17, 67, 67	
<code>alt</code> .....	1, 526	<code>\tag_mc_reset_box:N</code> 72, 78, 78, 247, 247	
<code>attribute</code> .....	1, 1295	<code>\tag_mc_use:n</code> .....	71, 35, 35, 36, 37
<code>attribute-class</code> .....	1, 1261	<code>\l_tag_para_attr_class_tl</code> .	413, 415
<code>E</code> .....	1, 526, 664	<code>\tag_resume:n</code> .....	6, 72, 199, 235, 248, 258, 407, 672, 701
<code>firstkey</code> .....	1	<code>\tag_socket_use:n</code> ..	39, 40, 62, 72, 73
<code>firstkid</code> .....	526	<code>\tag_socket_use:nn</code> .	39, 40, 63, 72, 78
<code>label</code> .....	1, 526	<code>\tag_socket_use:nnn</code> .	39, 40, 64, 72, 83
<code>lang</code> .....	1, 526	<code>\tag_socket_use_expandable:n</code> ... .....	39, 40, 65, 72, 89
<code>mathml</code> .....	1, 687	<code>\tag_spacechar_off:</code> ...	81, 81, 86, 115
<code>parent</code> .....	1, 526	<code>\tag_spacechar_on:</code> ...	81, 82, 98, 119
<code>ref</code> .....	1, 526, 664	<code>\tag_start:</code> .....	6, 199, 210, 223, 252
<code>stash</code> .....	1, 526	<code>\tag_start:n</code> ....	6, 199, 248, 256, 258
<code>tag</code> .....	1, 526	<code>\tag_stop:</code> ...	6, 49, 199, 201, 222, 251
<code>texsource</code> .....	1, 687	<code>\tag_stop:n</code> .....	6, 199, 234, 255, 257
<code>title</code> .....	1, 526	<code>\tag_struct_begin:n</code> .....	102, 48, 481, 488, 506, 516, 694, 745, 768, 825, 825, 829, 830
<code>title-o</code> .....	1, 526		
<code>\SuspendTagging</code> .....	40		
sys commands:			
<code>\c_sys_backend_str</code> .....	60		
<code>\c_sys_engine_str</code> .....	12, 14		
<code>\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF</code> ....	49, 49, 71, 83, 84, 105, 135, 148, 308, 316		
<code>\sys_if_engine_pdftex:TF</code> ...	26, 111		
<code>\sys_if_output_pdf:TF</code> ....	11, 28, 113		
<code>sys-no-interwordspace</code> .....	20, 101		
<b>T</b>			
<code>tabsorder (deprecated) (key)</code> ....	1, 296		
<code>tag (key)</code> .....	1, 526		
<code>tag<sub>␣</sub>(mc-key)</code> .....	72, 257, 458		
<code>tag<sub>␣</sub>(rolemap-key)</code> .....	161, 692		

\tag_struct_end: .....	102, 26, 53, 534, 538,	703, 759, 782, 825, 826, 999, 1000, 1038	__tag_backend_create_bdc_node ..	404
\tag_struct_end:n .....	102, 827, 1035		__tag_backend_create_bmc_node ..	375
\tag_struct_gput:nnn .....	103,		__tag_backend_create_emc_node ..	346
\tag_struct_gput_ref:nnn .....	103		\__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn ...	129, 206, 206
\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn .....	102, 135, 757, 780, 1219, 1219, 1228		\__tag_check_add_tag_role:nnn ..	171, 225
\tag_struct_object_ref:n .....	102, 636, 649, 660, 1161, 1162, 1166		\__tag_check_benchmark_tic: .	348,
\tag_struct_parent_int: .....	102,		352, 356, 360, 364, 368, 372, 486, 492	
\tag_struct_use:n .....	135, 750, 757, 773, 780, 1219, 1229		\__tag_check_benchmark_toc: .	350,
\tag_struct_use_num:n .....	102, 103, 58, 1041, 1041, 1043		354, 358, 362, 366, 370, 374, 487, 493	
\tag_suspend:n .....	6,		\__tag_check_if_active_mc: .....	148
\tag_tool:n .....	36, 13, 13, 14, 16, 20		\__tag_check_if_active_mc:TF ...	84, 103,
tag internal commands:			147, 175, 191, 237, 362, 368, 435, 441	
__tag_activate_mark_space .....	525		\__tag_check_if_active_struct: .	158
\g__tag_active_mc_bool .....	40, 119, 126, 150, 263, 270		\__tag_check_if_active_struct:TF	39, 147, 832,
\l__tag_active_mc_bool .....	122, 132, 150, 206, 216, 230, 241		833, 1004, 1005, 1037, 1045, 1102, 1222	
\l__tag_active_socket_bool .....	75, 80, 85,		\__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley: ..	352
\g__tag_active_space_bool .....	91, 96, 111, 132, 207, 217, 231, 242, 295		\__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF	211, 232
\g__tag_active_struct_bool .....	13, 56, 61, 126		\__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing: 358	
\l__tag_active_struct_bool .....	118, 126, 160, 265, 272, 309, 440		\__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF	112, 220, 237, 358
\g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool .....	121, 132, 160, 205, 215, 229, 240		\__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing_-	p: .....
\g__tag_active_tree_bool .....	9, 67, 120, 126, 264, 271, 343, 381		358	
\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn .....	85, 167, 167, 219		\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing: 369	
\__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_-			\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF	155, 224, 241, 369
stream:Nn .	65, 65, 66, 189, 189, 225		\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing_-	p: .....
\g__tag_attr_class_used_prop .....	284, 286, 1237, 1277		369	
\g__tag_attr_class_used_seq	282, 1242		\__tag_check_info_closing_-	struct:n .....
\g__tag_attr_entries_prop .....	293, 1237, 1245, 1273, 1313, 1318, 1322		183, 183, 191, 1010	
\__tag_attr_new_entry:nn .....	682, 1243, 1243, 1249, 1254, 1258		\__tag_check_init_mc_used: .....	282, 282, 285, 291
\g__tag_attr_objref_prop .....	1237, 1317, 1324, 1329		\__tag_check_mc_if_nested: .....	178, 244, 244, 373
\l__tag_attr_value_tl .....	1307, 1326, 1331, 1333, 1337, 1341		\__tag_check_mc_if_open: .....	239, 244, 252, 445
			\__tag_check_mc_in_galley:TF ...	352
			\__tag_check_mc_in_galley_p: ...	352
			\__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn	89, 96, 109, 112, 117, 259, 259
			\__tag_check_mc_tag:N .....	191, 271, 271, 385
			\__tag_check_mc_used:n .....	145, 287, 287, 329
			\g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray .	282, 292, 294, 297
			\__tag_check_no_open_struct: ...	192, 192, 1012, 1019
			\__tag_check_para_begin_show:nn	448, 489, 521

\__tag_check_para_end_show:nn ..	459, 533	\__tag_get_data_struct_id: <a href="#">485</a> , <a href="#">485</a>
\__tag_check_parent_child:nnN ..	559, 565, 667	\__tag_get_data_struct_num: <a href="#">490</a> , <a href="#">491</a>
\__tag_check_parent_child:nnnnN .	<a href="#">513</a>	\__tag_get_data_struct_tag: <a href="#">477</a> , <a href="#">477</a>
\__tag_check_parent_child:nnnnN	208, 401, 515,	\__tag_get_mathsubtype .....
561, 574, 589, 668, 679, 927, 1073, 1136		\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: .....
\__tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:	<a href="#">306</a> , <a href="#">306</a>	14, 15, 19, 20,
\__tag_check_struct_used:n .....	196, 196, 1050	102, 137, 167, 178, 187, 229, 248,
\__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n	168, 168, 866	256, 265, 273, 275, 291, 312, 326, 336
\__tag_check_structure_tag:N .....	176, 176, 510, 523	\__tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag .....
\__tag_check_timeout_v:n <a href="#">103</a> , <a href="#">103</a> ,	110, 111, 114, 149, 157, 164, 202,	\__tag_get_num_from .....
211, 283, 499, 515, 531, 604, 609, 616		\l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl .....
\__tag_debug_mc_begin_ignore:n .	387, 428	113, 206, 209, 222,
\__tag_debug_mc_begin_insert:n .	370, 380	399, 402, 415, 677, 680, 925, 928, 943
\__tag_debug_mc_end_ignore: <a href="#">401</a> , <a href="#">453</a>		\l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl\l__-
\__tag_debug_mc_end_insert: <a href="#">394</a> , <a href="#">443</a>		__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl\l__-
\__tag_debug_struct_begin_-	429, 997	__tag_tmpa_str .....
\__tag_debug_struct_begin_-	421, 994	\l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl .....
\__tag_debug_struct_end_check:n	451, 1037	114, 207, 210, 222,
\__tag_debug_struct_end_ignore:	444, 1032	400, 403, 415, 678, 681, 926, 929, 943
\__tag_debug_struct_end_insert:	436, 1030	\__tag_get_tag_from .....
\g__tag_delayed_shipout_bool .....	42, 47, 51, 239	\l__tag_get_tmpe_tl .....
\__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin: .	656, 717, 718	109,
\__tag_exclude_headfoot_end: .....	670, 719, 720	168, 173, 184, 186, 187, 238, 240,
\__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_-	683, 724, 725	241, 898, 904, 1187, 1189, 1193, 1199
\__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_-	699, 726, 727	\__tag_gincr_para_begin_int: ...
\__tag_fakespace .....	459	... <a href="#">343</a> , <a href="#">347</a> , <a href="#">365</a> , <a href="#">381</a> , <a href="#">394</a> , <a href="#">487</a> , <a href="#">514</a>
\__tag_fakespace: .....	71, 73, 320	\__tag_gincr_para_end_int: .....
\__tag_finish_structure: .....	13, 16, <a href="#">340</a> , <a href="#">341</a>	... <a href="#">343</a> , <a href="#">355</a> , <a href="#">373</a> , <a href="#">383</a> , <a href="#">530</a>
\__tag_get_data_mc_counter: .....	9, 9	\__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_-
\__tag_get_data_mc_tag: .....	256, 256, <a href="#">354</a> , <a href="#">354</a>	int: .. <a href="#">343</a> , <a href="#">343</a> , <a href="#">361</a> , <a href="#">380</a> , <a href="#">480</a> , <a href="#">505</a>
\__tag_get_data_struct_counter:	496, 497	\__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
		... <a href="#">343</a> , <a href="#">351</a> , <a href="#">369</a> , <a href="#">382</a> , <a href="#">537</a>
		\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: .
		... <a href="#">642</a> , <a href="#">651</a> , <a href="#">720</a> , <a href="#">727</a> , <a href="#">734</a>
		\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: .
		... <a href="#">640</a> , <a href="#">649</a> , <a href="#">719</a> , <a href="#">726</a> , <a href="#">733</a>
		\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:
		... <a href="#">641</a> , <a href="#">650</a> , <a href="#">718</a> , <a href="#">725</a> , <a href="#">732</a>
		\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:
		... <a href="#">639</a> , <a href="#">648</a> , <a href="#">717</a> , <a href="#">724</a> , <a href="#">731</a>
		\g__tag_in_mc_bool .....
		... <a href="#">16</a> , <a href="#">18</a> , <a href="#">179</a> , <a href="#">228</a> , <a href="#">240</a> ,
		<a href="#">374</a> , <a href="#">446</a> , <a href="#">664</a> , <a href="#">665</a> , <a href="#">679</a> , <a href="#">691</a> , <a href="#">692</a> , <a href="#">709</a>
		\__tag_insert_bdc_node .....
		... <a href="#">404</a>
		\__tag_insert_bmc_node .....
		... <a href="#">375</a>
		\__tag_insert_emc_node .....
		... <a href="#">346</a>
		\__tag_lastpagelabel: .....
		... <a href="#">89</a> , <a href="#">90</a> , <a href="#">108</a>
		\__tag_log .....
		... <a href="#">192</a>
		\l__tag_loglevel_int <a href="#">125</a> , <a href="#">132</a> , <a href="#">172</a> ,
		<a href="#">173</a> , <a href="#">185</a> , <a href="#">215</a> , <a href="#">234</a> , <a href="#">262</a> , <a href="#">265</a> , <a href="#">279</a> ,
		<a href="#">282</a> , <a href="#">285</a> , <a href="#">286</a> , <a href="#">287</a> , <a href="#">289</a> , <a href="#">382</a> , <a href="#">389</a> ,
		<a href="#">396</a> , <a href="#">403</a> , <a href="#">423</a> , <a href="#">431</a> , <a href="#">438</a> , <a href="#">446</a> , <a href="#">453</a> , <a href="#">482</a>
		\__tag_mark_spaces .....
		... <a href="#">464</a>
		\__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n
		... <a href="#">23</a> , <a href="#">45</a> , <a href="#">81</a> , <a href="#">382</a>

\l\_\_tag\_mc\_artifact\_bool .....  
     ..... [20](#), [124](#), [180](#), [194](#), [241](#), [378](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_artifact\_type\_tl .....  
     ..... [19](#), [128](#), [132](#), [136](#),  
     [140](#), [144](#), [148](#), [152](#), [156](#), [349](#), [380](#), [382](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc:nn [234](#), [237](#), [269](#), [311](#), [344](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:n ... [123](#), [239](#), [316](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:nn .....  
     ..... [239](#), [242](#), [272](#), [318](#), [323](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_shipout:nn .. [238](#), [250](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_begin\_marks:nn .....  
     ..... [23](#), [23](#), [44](#), [80](#), [389](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc:n ..... [234](#), [235](#), [340](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact: [338](#), [338](#), [351](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:n [338](#), [342](#), [352](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_botmarks\_seq .....  
     ..... [85](#), [21](#), [90](#), [111](#),  
     [161](#), [208](#), [216](#), [219](#), [221](#), [236](#), [354](#), [371](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_disable\_marks: ... [78](#), [78](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_emc: ... [158](#), [234](#), [236](#), [448](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_end\_marks: .. [23](#), [63](#), [82](#), [449](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq .....  
     ..... [85](#), [21](#), [87](#), [110](#), [196](#), [199](#),  
     [200](#), [207](#), [208](#), [218](#), [235](#), [354](#), [362](#), [364](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_mc\_footnote\_marks\_seq ... [14](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_get\_marks: . [84](#), [84](#), [210](#), [231](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_artifact:N .....  
     ..... [119](#), [338](#), [346](#), [380](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mc\_label:n .....  
     ..... [26](#), [26](#), [199](#), [393](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mcid:nn .....  
     ..... [239](#), [321](#), [326](#), [386](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:n [49](#), [140](#),  
     [142](#), [143](#), [172](#), [229](#), [327](#), [327](#), [337](#), [421](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_if\_in: ... [68](#), [82](#), [226](#), [233](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_if\_in:TF [68](#), [86](#), [226](#), [246](#), [254](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_if\_in\_p: ..... [68](#), [226](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tmb:n ...  
     ..... [108](#), [108](#), [171](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tme:n ...  
     ..... [108](#), [153](#), [172](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcid\_kids:n ...  
     ..... [131](#), [131](#), [150](#), [289](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcid\_single\_  
     kids:n ..... [131](#), [136](#), [290](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_label\_tl .....  
     . [22](#), [196](#), [199](#), [321](#), [389](#), [390](#), [393](#), [494](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_properties\_tl ...  
     ..... [22](#), [181](#), [270](#), [285](#), [286](#),  
     [306](#), [307](#), [388](#), [468](#), [477](#), [478](#), [490](#), [491](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_stash\_bool .....  
     ..... [20](#), [31](#), [40](#), [123](#), [202](#), [395](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_tag\_tl ... [19](#), [22](#),  
     [184](#), [244](#), [256](#), [262](#), [354](#), [376](#), [447](#), [464](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_tag\_tl [22](#), [183](#), [191](#),  
     [193](#), [243](#), [261](#), [375](#), [385](#), [387](#), [389](#), [463](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_lua\_set\_mc\_type\_attr:n  
     ..... [83](#), [83](#), [107](#), [193](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_lua\_unset\_mc\_type\_  
     attr: ..... [83](#), [109](#), [242](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_mc\_main\_marks\_seq ..... [14](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_mc\_marks ..... [13](#),  
     [25](#), [34](#), [47](#), [54](#), [65](#), [71](#), [88](#), [91](#), [197](#), [217](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_mc\_multicol\_marks\_seq ... [14](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_mc\_parenttree\_prop ....  
     ..... [17](#), [18](#), [103](#), [166](#), [185](#), [333](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_ref\_abspage\_tl .....  
     ..... [11](#), [275](#), [287](#), [295](#), [303](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_set\_label\_used:n [30](#), [30](#), [50](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_mc\_stack\_seq .....  
     ..... [18](#), [88](#), [95](#), [105](#), [268](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_store:nnn .. [93](#), [93](#), [107](#), [134](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_mc\_tmpa\_tl . [12](#), [289](#), [292](#), [296](#)  
 g\_\_tag\_MCID\_abs\_int ..... [7](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_MCID\_byabspage\_prop ....  
     ..... [267](#), [285](#), [294](#), [302](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_MCID\_tmp\_bypage\_int ....  
     ..... [268](#), [271](#), [292](#), [300](#), [313](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_mode\_lua\_bool .....  
     ... [41](#), [49](#), [50](#), [146](#), [241](#), [297](#), [314](#),  
     [323](#), [323](#), [401](#), [596](#), [659](#), [674](#), [686](#), [704](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_new\_output\_prop\_handler:n  
     ..... [70](#), [80](#), [104](#), [839](#)  
 \_\_tag\_pairs\_prop ..... [209](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_para\_attr\_class\_tl .....  
     ..... [324](#), [415](#), [519](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_para\_begin\_int .....  
     ..... [324](#), [349](#), [367](#), [454](#), [578](#), [583](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_para\_bool [324](#), [421](#), [430](#), [437](#),  
     [443](#), [476](#), [495](#), [528](#), [631](#), [632](#), [658](#), [685](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_para\_end\_int .....  
     ..... [324](#), [357](#), [375](#), [465](#), [578](#), [584](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_para\_flattened\_bool ....  
     ..... [324](#), [426](#), [433](#), [446](#), [478](#), [503](#), [535](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_para\_main\_attr\_class\_tl  
     ..... [324](#), [509](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_para\_main\_begin\_int ...  
     ..... [324](#), [345](#), [363](#), [569](#), [574](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_para\_main\_end\_int .....  
     ..... [324](#), [353](#), [371](#), [569](#), [575](#)  
 \\_\_tag\_para\_main\_store\_struct: .  
     ..... [385](#), [385](#), [485](#), [511](#)  
 \g\_\_tag\_para\_main\_struct\_tl [324](#), [387](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_para\_main\_tag\_tl .....  
     ..... [324](#), [425](#), [432](#), [445](#), [483](#), [508](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_para\_show\_bool .....  
     ..... [324](#), [422](#), [423](#), [438](#), [451](#), [462](#)  
 \l\_\_tag\_para\_tag\_default\_tl ... [324](#)

\l\_\_tag\_para\_tag\_tl .....  
     324, 393, 424, 431, 439, 444, 488, 518  
 \l\_\_tag\_parent\_child\_check\_tl ..  
     .... 212, 213, 405, 406, 459, 683,  
     684, 932, 933, 1078, 1079, 1141, 1142  
 \\_\_tag\_parenttree\_add\_objr:nn ..  
     ..... 162, 162, 465  
 \l\_\_tag\_parenttree\_content\_tl ..  
     .... 169, 188, 200, 220, 228, 249, 252  
 \g\_\_tag\_parenttree\_objr\_tl ....  
     ..... 161, 164, 249  
 \\_\_tag\_pdf\_name\_e:n ..... 100, 100  
 \_\_tag\_pdf\_object\_ref ..... 434  
 \\_\_tag\_prop\_gput:Nnn .....  
     ..... 9, 29, 92, 120, 127,  
     131, 180, 183, 191, 293, 301, 307, 1056  
 \\_\_tag\_prop\_item:Nn ... 9, 53, 180, 187  
 \\_\_tag\_prop\_new:N ..... 9,  
     9, 11, 103, 180, 180, 194, 267, 837  
 \\_\_tag\_prop\_new\_linked:N .....  
     ..... 15, 17, 180, 181  
 \\_\_tag\_prop\_show:N 9, 66, 180, 189, 197  
 \c\_\_tag\_property\_mc\_clist .....  
     ..... 123, 249, 310  
 \\_\_tag\_property\_record:nn .....  
     . 28, 149, 149, 158, 245, 306, 451, 532  
 \\_\_tag\_property\_ref\_lastpage:nn  
     . 82, 159, 159, 159, 173, 176, 310, 324  
 \c\_\_tag\_property\_struct\_clist ..  
     ..... 123, 534  
 \l\_\_tag\_Ref\_tmpa\_tl ..... 109  
 g\_\_tag\_role/RoleMap\_dict ..... 18  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_add\_mathml\_bool ...  
     ..... 73, 258, 702, 752  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_add\_tag:nn .....  
     ..... 127, 127, 155, 282, 367, 737  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_add\_tag:nnnn .....  
     ..... 169, 169, 228, 314, 742  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_alloctag:nnn .... 81,  
     85, 95, 107, 117, 126, 142, 186, 279, 310  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_debug\_prop .....  
     ..... 162, 11, 518, 519, 591, 592  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_get:nnNN .....  
     156, 158, 166, 229, 231, 255, 519, 877  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_get\_parent\_child\_  
     rule:nnnN 176, 459, 460, 512, 544, 651  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_index\_prop . 162, 10,  
     416, 424, 436, 437, 438, 443, 449,  
     451, 452, 455, 457, 464, 465, 520, 530  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_NS<ns>\_class\_prop 162  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_NS<ns>\_prop ..... 162  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_NS\_mathml\_prop 260, 453  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_NS\_new:nnn .....  
     . 164, 20, 22, 30, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 80  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_NS\_prop .....  
     .... 162, 9, 26, 56, 168, 318, 336, 725  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_parent\_child\_  
     intarray ..... 392, 395, 473  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_read\_namespace:n 339,  
     339, 343, 344, 345, 347, 349, 351, 352  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_read\_namespace:nn ..  
     ..... 320, 320, 341, 350  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_read\_namespace\_  
     line:nw ..... 257, 261, 294, 330  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_remap: .....  
     ..... 690, 690, 691, 951, 1083, 1146  
 \\_\_tag\_role\_remap\_id: ..... 691, 691  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_remap\_NS\_tl .....  
     688, 950, 953, 1082, 1085, 1145, 1148  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_remap\_tag\_tl .....  
     688, 949, 952, 1081, 1084, 1144, 1147  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_role\_namespace\_  
     tmpa\_tl ..... 12,  
     697, 718, 723, 725, 727, 731, 746  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_role\_tmpa\_tl .....  
     ..... 12, 696, 716, 722, 739, 745  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_rolemap\_prop .....  
     ..... 162, 18, 145, 148, 151, 160,  
     216, 219, 222, 262, 265, 387, 525, 535  
 \c\_\_tag\_role\_rules\_num\_prop 393, 484  
 \c\_\_tag\_role\_rules\_prop 393, 396, 477  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_tag\_namespace\_tmpa\_  
     tl ..... 12, 567, 571, 575, 695, 744  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_tag\_namespace\_tmpb\_  
     tl ..... 14, 568, 569, 572, 576  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_tag\_namespace\_tmpb\_  
     tl\_{}% ..... 12  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_tag\_tmpa\_tl .....  
     ..... 12, 694, 715, 738, 743  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_tags\_class\_prop ...  
     .... 162, 8, 90, 99, 112, 121, 137, 270  
 \g\_\_tag\_role\_tags\_NS\_prop .. 162,  
     7, 88, 97, 110, 119, 130, 178, 213,  
     277, 385, 507, 516, 567, 568, 721, 1025  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_tmpa\_seq ..... 12  
 \l\_\_tag\_role\_update\_bool .....  
     ..... 210, 257, 258, 266, 346, 348  
 \c\_\_tag\_role\_userNS\_id\_str .....  
     ..... 163, 59, 80  
 \g\_\_tag\_root\_default\_tl ..... 287  
 \g\_\_tag\_saved\_in\_mc\_bool .....  
     ..... 655, 664, 679, 691, 709  
 \\_\_tag\_seq\_gput\_left:Nn .....  
     ..... 9, 41, 185, 193, 248  
 \\_\_tag\_seq\_gput\_right:Nn ..... 9,  
     36, 180, 184, 192, 211, 221, 232, 271  
 \\_\_tag\_seq\_item:Nn ... 9, 48, 180, 186



\__tag_seq_new:N	.....	9, 9, 22, 105, 180, 182, 195, 840
\__tag_seq_show:N	9, 59, 180, 188, 196	
\__tag_show_spacemark	.....	445
\l__tag_showspaces_bool	...	7, 16, 17
\g__tag_softhyphen_bool	...	138, 294
\__tag_space_chars_shipout	.....	557
\__tag_start_para_ints:	.....	218, 243, 359, 359
\__tag_stop_para_ints:	.....	208, 232, 359, 378
\__tag_store_parent_child_-	rule:nnn	393, 393, 430
g__tag_struct_1_prop	.....	102
\__tag_struct_add_AF:nn	.....	700, 717, 737, 744, 764, 807
\__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:nn	.....	689, 716, 778, 782, 789, 797
\l__tag_struct_addkid_tl	64, 554, 968	
\g__tag_struct_AFobj_int	687, 695, 698	
\g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop	.....	11, 95, 96, 98, 101, 224
\g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop	66, 645	
\l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool	.....	63, 536, 921, 981
\__tag_struct_exchange_kid_-	command:N	285, 285, 294, 325
\__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n	.....	135, 295, 295, 421
\__tag_struct_format_parentrole:nnN	.....	389, 390
\__tag_struct_format_Ref	.....	122
\__tag_struct_format_Ref:nnN	391, 391	
\__tag_struct_format_rolemap:nnN	.....	389, 389
\__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN	.....	137, 375, 375, 422
\__tag_struct_get_id:n	.....	95, 100, 113, 114, 139, 140, 428, 487
\__tag_struct_get_parentrole:nNN	.....	178, 178, 194, 204, 397, 675, 923, 1069, 1132
\__tag_struct_gput_data_ref:nn	.....	1201, 1218
\__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_-	aux:nnn	1180, 1181, 1203, 1207, 1211, 1215
\__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_-	dest:nn	1209
\__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_-	label:nn	1205
\__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_-	num:nn	1213
\__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn	.....	436, 436, 1224
\__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_-	right:nn	195, 207, 208, 227, 330
\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_-	right:nnn	260, 260, 263, 284, 452
\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_-	left:nn	244, 244, 245, 259
\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_-	right:nn	228, 228, 229, 243, 1052, 1115
g__tag_struct_kids_1_seq	.....	102
\g__tag_struct_label_num_prop	.....	62, 530, 632
\l__tag_struct_lang_tl	.....	637, 823, 848, 853
\__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n	.....	98, 101, 195, 214
\c__tag_struct_null_tl	.....	10, 329
\g__tag_struct_objR_seq	.....	8
\__tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn	.....	70, 70, 84
\__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn	.....	88, 89, 90, 96, 107, 112, 117, 122, 129, 155, 164, 170, 331, 344, 358, 566, 578, 592, 608, 616, 681, 703, 746, 765, 808, 844, 850, 855, 882, 900, 909, 959, 1119, 1196, 1287, 1338
\g__tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop	.....	69, 82
\__tag_struct_Ref_dest:nN	622, 643	
\__tag_struct_Ref_label:nN	622, 630	
\__tag_struct_Ref_num:nN	622, 656	
\__tag_struct_Ref_obj:nN	622, 622	
\g__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl	.....	58
\l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl	.....	61, 881, 886, 913
\l__tag_struct_roletag_tl	.....	58, 880, 886, 888, 913, 917
\__tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn	.....	150, 152, 162, 177, 862, 954, 1086, 1149
\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl	.....	16, 29, 38, 69, 75, 99, 148, 154, 162, 168, 205, 216, 226, 312, 331, 335, 398, 409, 418, 482, 487, 493, 918, 966, 970, 971, 992, 1010, 1016, 1053, 1060, 1066, 1116, 1123, 1129
\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_-	ttmpa_tl	16, 445, 454, 471, 546, 860, 867, 871, 896, 924, 936, 946, 963, 967, 969, 972, 984, 985, 993
\g__tag_struct_stack_seq	.....	12, 22, 25, 444, 674, 870, 876, 919, 1003, 1008, 1014

\c__tag_struct_StructElem_-	329, 411, 418, 422, 423, 424, 425,
entries_seq .....	426, 427, 436, 437, 438, 443, 449,
\c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_-	451, 455, 455, 459, 463, 464, 467,
entries_seq .....	474, 484, 486, 495, 520, 520, 521,
\g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl .....	522, 525, 527, 541, 545, 595, 603,
.....	605, 606, 608, 612, 617, 648, 652,
520, 522, 865, 879, 931, 944, 950,	674, 676, 699, 702, 711, 712, 714,
953, 957, 991, 1027, 1075, 1082,	938, 939, 946, 1007, 1008, 1014,
1085, 1089, 1138, 1145, 1148, 1152	1016, 1021, 1024, 1025, 1027, 1071,
\g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq ...	1076, 1110, 1134, 1139, 1279, 1290
.....	\l__tag_tmpb_box .....
14, 50,	.....
251, 252, 426, 441, 455, 916, 1007, 1021	109, 172, 179, 180, 184, 186
\g__tag_struct_tag_tl .....	\l__tag_tmpb_seq .....
.....	.....
58, 183, 184, 187, 375, 376,	109, 1266, 1267, 1302, 1303
508, 510, 517, 520, 521, 523, 864,	\l__tag_tmpb_tl .....
878, 917, 930, 944, 949, 952, 956,	.....
1023, 1025, 1067, 1074, 1081, 1084,	174, 88, 103, 109, 117,
1088, 1130, 1137, 1144, 1147, 1151	119, 407, 424, 430, 452, 457, 465,
\__tag_struct_write_obj .....	468, 474, 488, 520, 522, 530, 532,
.....	535, 537, 542, 545, 622, 630, 632,
122	632, 633, 635, 636, 639, 644, 645,
\__tag_struct_write_obj:n .....	649, 649, 652, 1072, 1077, 1135, 1140
.....	\__tag_tree_fill_parenttree: ...
150, 403, 403	.....
\l__tag_tag_stop_int 199, 203, 204,	170, 171, 246
212, 213, 220, 227, 228, 237, 238, 246	\__tag_tree_final_checks: 20, 20, 346
\g__tag_tagunmarked_bool 137, 291, 293	\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int .. 77, 81, 145
\l__tag_tmpa_box .....	\__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:
.....	.....
109, 171, 177, 178, 182, 193, 194	226, 226, 243
\l__tag_tmpa_clist .....	\g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_-
.....	tl .....
109, 1265, 1266, 1299, 1300, 1302	31, 37, 56
\l__tag_tmpa_int .....	\__tag_tree_parenttree_rerun_-
89, 92, 97,	msg: .....
100, 104, 109, 113, 398, 410, 412, 482	170, 213, 248
\l__tag_tmpa_prop .....	\__tag_tree_update_openaction: .
.....	.....
109, 175, 183, 196, 198	41, 74
\l__tag_tmpa_seq .....	\__tag_tree_write_classmap: ...
.....	.....
50, 57, 58, 109, 299, 301,	279, 279, 361
303, 304, 305, 306, 319, 339, 349,	\__tag_tree_write_idtree: .. 85, 353
411, 414, 422, 423, 425, 426, 427,	\__tag_tree_write_namespaces: ..
506, 508, 509, 515, 517, 518, 714,	.....
715, 716, 1267, 1271, 1281, 1282,	314, 314, 365
1283, 1285, 1303, 1309, 1311, 1335	\__tag_tree_write_parenttree: ..
\l__tag_tmpa_str .....	.....
42,	239, 239, 349
43, 48, 115, 281, 286, 291, 302, 307,	\__tag_tree_write_rolemap: .....
314, 473, 478, 486, 491, 562, 569,	.....
574, 581, 588, 595, 604, 611, 677, 684	256, 256, 357
\l__tag_tmpa_tl .....	\__tag_tree_write_structelements:
.....	.....
41, 42, 46, 48, 49, 50, 55, 86, 87,	146, 146, 369
93, 93, 96, 98, 101, 105, 105, 107,	\__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
108, 109, 112, 113, 115, 118, 119,	.....
137, 137, 138, 140, 142, 142, 145,	125, 125, 373
146, 151, 179, 180, 182, 185, 186,	\__tag_whatsits: .....
198, 199, 200, 201, 201, 202, 204,	.....
207, 213, 216, 217, 218, 222, 226,	35, 57, 62, 63, 66, 356, 357
232, 270, 271, 273, 277, 279, 281,	tag-namespace_(rolemap-key) .....
287, 288, 288, 291, 300, 301, 302,	692
304, 306, 308, 308, 310, 316, 327,	tag/struct/1 internal commands:
	__tag/struct/1 .....
	30
	tag/tree/namespaces internal commands:
	__tag/tree/namespaces .....
	313



tag/tree/parenttree internal commands:	
__tag/tree/parenttree	153
tag/tree/rolemap internal commands:	
__tag/tree/rolemap	255
tagabspage	7, 163
tagmcabs	7, 163
\tagmcbegin	36, 162, 22, 402, 408
\tagmccend	36, 22, 408
tagmcid	7, 163
\tagmccifin	36
\tagmccifinTF	36, 39
\tagmccuse	36, 22
\tagpdfparaOff	38, 628
\tagpdfparaOn	38, 628
\tagpdfsetup	36, 105, 161, 6
\tagpdfsuppressmarks	38, 633
\tagstart	6, 223, 254
\tagstop	6, 222, 253
tagstruct	7, 163
\tagstructbegin	
..	37, 134, 161, 162, 45, 290, 393, 395
\tagstructend	37, 45, 291, 408
tagstructobj	7, 163
\tagstructuse	37, 45
\tagtool	36, 13
tagunmarked (deprecated) (key)	1, 291
test/lang <sub>U</sub> (setup-key)	635
$\TeX$ and $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ commands:	
\M	168
\auxout	94
\bsphack	151
@cclv	605
\esphack	153
@gobble	31, 55
@ifpackageloaded	28, 588
\@kernel@after@foot	651
\@kernel@after@head	649
\@kernel@before@cclv	595, 602
\@kernel@before@foot	650
\@kernel@before@footins	598, 600
\@kernel@before@head	646, 648
\@kernel@tag@hangfrom	391
\@kernel@tagsupport@makecol	594, 607
\@makecol	604, 609
\@maxdepth	181
\@mult@ptagging@hook	612, 614
\@outputbox	610
\@secondoftwo	31, 55
\@tempboxa	396, 406, 408
\c@chapter	362, 380
\c@page	604, 609
\count@	619
\mult@firstbox	617
\mult@rightbox	621
\new@label@record	96
\on@line	500, 515, 531
\page@sofar	616
\process@cols	617
tex commands:	
\tex_botmarks:D	91
\tex_firstmarks:D	88
\tex_kern:D	184
\tex_marks:D	25, 34, 47, 54, 65, 71
\tex_special:D	66
\tex_splitbotmarks:D	217
\tex_splitfirstmarks:D	197
texsource (key)	1, 687
\the	604, 609
\tiny	454, 465
title (key)	1, 526
title-o (key)	1, 526
tl commands:	
\c_empty_tl	367, 387
\c_space_tl	54, 55, 58, 60, 76, 103, 166, 190, 191, 193, 198, 200, 202, 209, 252, 290, 368, 385, 400, 427, 604, 609, 626, 636, 649, 660, 727, 947, 984, 1066, 1129, 1282, 1328
\tl_clear:N	87, 88, 105, 181, 190, 191, 281, 377, 569
\tl_const:Nn	10
\tl_count:n	78, 82, 145
\tl_gput_right:Nn	164, 725
\tl_gset:Nn	18, 32, 37, 99, 244, 262, 288, 300, 333, 387, 447, 464, 508, 509, 517, 518, 521, 522, 732, 918, 1016, 1023, 1027
\tl_gset_eq:NN	184, 376
\tl_head:N	605, 632
\tl_if_empty:NTF	
.....	42, 43, 108, 196, 273, 299, 350, 390, 606, 633, 712, 718, 848
\tl_if_empty:nTF	51, 69, 77, 89, 143, 198, 208, 212, 227, 264, 268, 278, 297, 299, 299, 408, 474, 482, 483, 585, 593, 601, 620, 692, 762
\tl_if_empty_p:n	312
\tl_if_eq:NNTF	329, 354
\tl_if_eq:NnTF	107
\tl_if_eq:nnTF	214, 267, 280
\tl_if_exist:NTF	135, 340, 413, 612, 720
\tl_if_head_eq_charcode:nNTF	48
\tl_if_in:nnTF	187
\tl_new:N	11, 12, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 31, 32, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114,

161, 169, 287, 332, 334, 336, 338, 341, 342, 459, 688, 689, 730, 823, 1240	tree-mcid-index-wrong . . . . . <a href="#">20</a> , <a href="#">99</a>
<code>\tl_put_left:Nn</code> . . . . . <a href="#">649</a> , <a href="#">651</a>	tree-statistic . . . . . <a href="#">20</a> , <a href="#">54</a>
<code>\tl_put_right:Nn</code> . . . . .	tree-struct-still-open . . . . . <a href="#">20</a> , <a href="#">47</a>
. . . . . <a href="#">93</a> , <a href="#">103</a> , <a href="#">117</a> , <a href="#">188</a> , <a href="#">200</a> , <a href="#">219</a> ,	
<a href="#">249</a> , <a href="#">270</a> , <a href="#">285</a> , <a href="#">286</a> , <a href="#">288</a> , <a href="#">306</a> , <a href="#">307</a> ,	
<a href="#">385</a> , <a href="#">393</a> , <a href="#">398</a> , <a href="#">468</a> , <a href="#">477</a> , <a href="#">478</a> , <a href="#">490</a> ,	
<a href="#">491</a> , <a href="#">600</a> , <a href="#">602</a> , <a href="#">607</a> , <a href="#">614</a> , <a href="#">624</a> , <a href="#">634</a> ,	
<a href="#">647</a> , <a href="#">648</a> , <a href="#">650</a> , <a href="#">658</a> , <a href="#">1189</a> , <a href="#">1326</a> , <a href="#">1333</a>	
<code>\tl_replace_once:Nnn</code> . . . . . <a href="#">288</a>	
<code>\tl_set:Nn</code> . . . . . <a href="#">41</a> , <a href="#">65</a> , <a href="#">86</a> , <a href="#">118</a> ,	
<a href="#">128</a> , <a href="#">132</a> , <a href="#">136</a> , <a href="#">140</a> , <a href="#">140</a> , <a href="#">144</a> , <a href="#">148</a> ,	
<a href="#">152</a> , <a href="#">156</a> , <a href="#">162</a> , <a href="#">164</a> , <a href="#">182</a> , <a href="#">185</a> , <a href="#">186</a> ,	
<a href="#">187</a> , <a href="#">228</a> , <a href="#">240</a> , <a href="#">241</a> , <a href="#">243</a> , <a href="#">245</a> , <a href="#">246</a> ,	
<a href="#">251</a> , <a href="#">252</a> , <a href="#">261</a> , <a href="#">273</a> , <a href="#">275</a> , <a href="#">277</a> , <a href="#">304</a> ,	
<a href="#">308</a> , <a href="#">308</a> , <a href="#">311</a> , <a href="#">321</a> , <a href="#">327</a> , <a href="#">335</a> , <a href="#">337</a> ,	
<a href="#">339</a> , <a href="#">415</a> , <a href="#">463</a> , <a href="#">470</a> , <a href="#">486</a> , <a href="#">488</a> , <a href="#">503</a> ,	
<a href="#">522</a> , <a href="#">527</a> , <a href="#">532</a> , <a href="#">537</a> , <a href="#">546</a> , <a href="#">550</a> , <a href="#">554</a> ,	
<a href="#">580</a> , <a href="#">595</a> , <a href="#">605</a> , <a href="#">608</a> , <a href="#">612</a> , <a href="#">617</a> , <a href="#">622</a> ,	
<a href="#">632</a> , <a href="#">635</a> , <a href="#">639</a> , <a href="#">644</a> , <a href="#">657</a> , <a href="#">715</a> , <a href="#">716</a> ,	
<a href="#">727</a> , <a href="#">731</a> , <a href="#">860</a> , <a href="#">939</a> , <a href="#">1193</a> , <a href="#">1279</a> , <a href="#">1307</a>	
<code>\tl_set_eq:NN</code> . . . . . <a href="#">183</a> , <a href="#">375</a>	
<code>\tl_show:N</code> . . . . . <a href="#">966</a> , <a href="#">967</a> , <a href="#">1331</a> , <a href="#">1337</a>	
<code>\tl_tail:n</code> . . . . . <a href="#">480</a>	
<code>\tl_to_str:n</code> . . . . .	
. . . . . <a href="#">32</a> , <a href="#">47</a> , <a href="#">148</a> , <a href="#">204</a> , <a href="#">219</a> , <a href="#">377</a> , <a href="#">410</a>	
<code>\tl_trim_spaces:n</code> . . . . . <a href="#">48</a>	
<code>\tl_use:N</code> . . . . . <a href="#">137</a> , <a href="#">708</a> , <a href="#">751</a> , <a href="#">770</a> , <a href="#">813</a>	
token commands:	
<code>\token_to_str:N</code> . . . . . <a href="#">96</a> , <a href="#">604</a> , <a href="#">609</a>	
	<code>uncompress (deprecated) (key)</code> . . . . . <a href="#">278</a>
	<code>unittag_␣(deprecated)</code> . . . . . <a href="#">419</a>
	<code>\unskip</code> . . . . . <a href="#">36</a>
	use commands:
	<code>\use:N</code> . . . . . <a href="#">67</a> , <a href="#">108</a> , <a href="#">634</a> , <a href="#">968</a>
	<code>\use:n</code> . . . . . <a href="#">41</a> , <a href="#">328</a>
	<code>\use_i:nn</code> . . . . .
	. . . . . <a href="#">186</a> , <a href="#">240</a> , <a href="#">367</a> , <a href="#">387</a> , <a href="#">459</a> , <a href="#">463</a> , <a href="#">1024</a>
	<code>\use_ii:nn</code> . . . . . <a href="#">104</a> , <a href="#">119</a> , <a href="#">187</a> , <a href="#">241</a> , <a href="#">336</a>
	<code>\use_none:n</code> . . . . . <a href="#">81</a> , <a href="#">103</a> , <a href="#">103</a> , <a href="#">118</a>
	<code>\use_none:nn</code> . . . . . <a href="#">80</a> , <a href="#">1174</a>
	<code>\UseExpandableTaggingSocket</code> . . . . . <a href="#">40</a> , <a href="#">70</a> , <a href="#">72</a>
	<code>\UseSocket</code> . . . . . <a href="#">39</a> , <a href="#">40</a>
	<code>\UseTaggingSocket</code> . . . . . <a href="#">39</a> , <a href="#">40</a> , <a href="#">69</a> , <a href="#">72</a>
	<b>V</b>
	<code>\vbadness</code> . . . . . <a href="#">168</a> , <a href="#">192</a>
	vbox commands:
	<code>\vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn</code> . . . . . <a href="#">194</a>
	<code>\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn</code> . . . . . <a href="#">170</a>
	<code>\vbox_unpack_drop:N</code> . . . . . <a href="#">183</a>
	<code>\vfuzz</code> . . . . . <a href="#">169</a>
	<code>viewer/startstructure_␣(setup-key)</code> . . . . . <a href="#">33</a>
	<b>W</b>
	<code>\wd</code> . . . . . <a href="#">406</a>